

Evaluation and Adaptation Committee

Prof. Nayel Darweesh Al-Shara'h (Head)

Dr. Manal Fahed Aburumman D

Dr. Hanan Hasan El-Kanash

Saad Mohammad Odeh

Publisher: The National Center for Curriculum Development

The National Center for Curriculum Development is pleased to have your feedback and comments on this book through the following contact details:



06-5376262 / 237



06-5376266



P.O.Box: 2088 Amman 11941



@nccdjor



feedback@nccd.gov.jo



www.nccd.gov.jo

The Ministry of Education has decided to adopt this book for Jordanian schools in accordance with the approval of the Supreme Council of the National Curriculum Center in its meeting No. 3/2024 on 7/5/2024 and the approval of the Board of Education decision No. 46/2024 in its meeting No. 3/2024 on 26/6/2024 for the 2024/2025 academic year.

© Pearson Education Limited and York Press Ltd. 2024

ISBN: 978-9923-41-611-2

The Hashemite Kingdom of Jordan
Deposit number by the National Library Department
(2024/4/2409)

Primary indexing data for the book

Book title Jordan Team Together, Grade 5: Teacher's Book, Semester 1

Prepared by Jordan National Center for Curriculum Development

Publication data Amman: National Center for Curriculum Development, 2024

Classification number 372,6521

Descriptors /English Language//Courses//Basic Education/

Edition data First edition

The author bears full legal responsibility for the content of their work, and this work does not express the opinion of the National Library Department.

The right of Jenny Heath to be identified as author of this Work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Royal Legislative Decree, 12 April 1/1996, which approves the consolidated text of the Law of Intellectual Property Rights.

The publisher would like to thank Gareth Vaughan for his contribution.

All rights reserved; no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise without the prior written permission of the Publishers.

1445هـ / 2024 م :(First edition (trial







Teacher's Book with Digital Resources

Contents

Scope and sequence	2
Introduction	4
Course components	6
Unit walkthrough	8
Assessment	11
How to	15
Games bank	19
Lessons notes	21
Glossary	150
Extra resources	151





Scope and sequence

Unit	t	Unit objectives	Vocabulary	Grammar	Listening
Welc back	come	Describing free-time activities; talking about appearance	Free-time activities: play football, play basketball, goswimming, Science Club, visit Granny, tennis lesson Appearance: curly hair, long hair, straight hair, short hair, dark hair, a beard, fair hair, a moustache	Present simple with before/after/when When Jameela gets home, she plays with her cat.	Following the sequence of event in a simple story or narrative; identifying people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of their physical appearance and clothes
Tale	nt show	Describing personality; talking about hobbies	Personality adjectives: shy, confident, lazy, hard-working, friendly, cheerful, kind, quiet, polite, rude, tidy, untidy Hobbies: count, spell, do experiments, bake a cake, throw a ball, fix toys, juggle, make a pizza Pronunciation: untidy, unfriendly, unhappy, unlucky, unwell, unsafe	Comparative and superlative adjectives. My mum is shorter than me. She's the shortest person in our family! be good at I'm good at baking a cake.	Follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative; recognising familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions
Then	and now	Taking about technology; using verbs	Technology: computer, email, smartwatch, keyboard, letter, carry, mouse, telephone, call, tablet, mobile phone, study Verbs: post a letter, hold a pen, send an email, win a race, make a face, make a sandwich, tell a story, tie a shoelace Pronunciation: inform, information, describe, description	Past simple Did you have a phone ten years ago? That computer was really big! could/couldn't When I was one, I could walk but I couldn't talk.	Following the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative; extracting factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events; identifying the context of short, simple dialogues related to familiar everyday situations
o's Lear	ning Club:	Language bo	oster 1		
Let's	explore!	Talking about space; using big numbers	Space: Sun, star, rocket, Moon, solar system, space station, Earth, telescope, spacesuit, planet, comet, satellite Big numbers: a hundred, five hundred, a thousand, five thousand, ten thousand, fifty thousand, a million Pronunciation: planet, spacesuit, rocket, satellite, astronaut, telescope, scientist, explorer	will/won't I'll get him a present. I won't get him a book. How? How deep is the Grand Canyon?	Following the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative; identifying specific information in short, simple dialogues in which speakers make arrangements to do something; identifying key information about future plans in short, simple dialogues
Off t shop	o the s	Talking about shops, money and prices	Shops: butcher's, newsagent's, phone shop, greengrocer's, jeweller's, corner shop, fishmonger's, sports shop, shoe shop, pharmacy, gift shop, toy shop Money and prices: money, box, save, purse, spend, wallet, buy, birthday money, sell Pronunciation: pay, payment, encourage, encouragement	Relative clauses It's the man who we saw earlier. We're in the shop where my brother works. have to / don't have to I have to save some money.	Following the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative; identifying key information such as prices, times and dates in a short description
o's Lear	ning Club:	Language bo	oster 2		
estivals	: Harvest F	estival, World	l Water Day		
olve it					
rammai	r reference				
rogress	path				

Speaking	Reading	Writing	Pronunciation	Project	Viewing and presenting	Function
Describing daily routines in a simple way; describing someone's physical appearance in a basic way	Identifying specific information in a simple story; understanding the correct sequence of events; understanding basic sentences describing someone's physical appearance	Writing short, simple descriptions of people's physical appearance using basic connectors			Presenting a poem about family to the class	
Describing someone's physical appearance in a basic way; making simple, direct comparisons between two people or things	Following the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative; identifying people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of their physical appearance and clothes; getting the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures	Writing short, simple descriptions of people's physical appearance using basic connectors; making simple comparisons between people, places or things; writing a short description of a person they know well	The prefix un- for adjectives: untidy, unfriendly, unhappy, unlucky, unwell, unsafe	Making a good manners book	Sharing a house number design with the class; presenting a good manners book to the class	Describing people She's very friendly.
Talking about past events or experiences, using simple language; expressing ability or lack of ability in relation to basic everyday actions; describing basic differences between two pictures	Identifying key information in short, simple factual texts from the headings and illustrations; getting the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics; identifying the main idea of each paragraph in extended structured texts	Writing about past activities using simple language, given a model; completing a table or form with specific information extracted from a short, simple written text on a familiar topic	suffix -tion: inform, information, describe,	Writing a guide to a museum	Presenting a museum to the class	Asking for information I'd like some information about the Science Museum, please.
Social Studi	es: Are all the planets r	ocky?				
Talking about plans for the near future in a simple way; giving an opinion in a structured discussion; telling a simple story; describing common everyday objects using simple language	Getting the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics; scanning a simple text to find specific information; extracting specific information from simple informational texts related to everyday life	Writing a short, simple guide to their town/city with appropriate subheadings, given a model; writing short, simple personal emails/letters about familiar topics, given prompts	Syllable stress with two and three syllable words: planet, spacesuit, rocket, satellite, astronaut, telescope, scientist, explorer	Making a class book about ancient places	Showing an astronaut's bed design to the class; presenting an ancient place to the class	Giving personal information I'm interested in joining the Space Explorers Club.
Describing everyday activities in town using simple language; describing common everyday objects using simple language; expressing their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language	Extracting specific information in short texts on familiar topics; identifying key information in short, simple factual texts from the headings and illustrations; scanning a simple text to find specific information; identifying the overall theme of a simple illustrated story	Writing simple sentences about familiar things; writing short, simple descriptive texts giving information about common shops and amenities in their town, using basic linking words/phrases and given a model	Changing verbs to nouns using the suffix - ment: pay, payment, encourage, encouragement	Making a TV advert for a corner shop	Showing a phone case design to a partner; presenting a TV advert for a corner shop to the class	Asking for a price How much is it? It's fifteer dinars and fifty piastres.
Science: Ho	w can plants keep us he	ealthy?				

Introduction

About Jordan Team Together

Learn Together! Succeed Together! Team Together!

Jordan Team Together is a fast-paced, 7-level primary English course that develops language alongside future-ready skills. Pupils are challenged to communicate creatively in authentic contexts, think critically and work together to get results. Jordan Team Together sets out a clear path for progress and prepares children for success in external examinations including PTE Young Learners and Cambridge English Qualifications.

Jordan Team Together takes pupils from level Pre A1 to B1 of the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEFR).

For pupils

Throughout their Primary education pupils are in a transitional period between childhood and their teens and are still developing intellectually and emotionally.

Jordan Team Together follows children's developmental stages by offering content that is adapted to their cognitive needs in each level through a careful choice of the main characters, the topics, the language content and the way in which it is presented.

Jordan Team Together has been designed to create an enjoyable and engaging environment for effective learning. A full-colour Pupil's Book and Activity Book are complemented with a wide range of multimedia and digital tools, such as videos and digital content online, which are certain to captivate pupils' attention.

For teachers

Jordan Team Together has been created using tried and tested methodology for effective language teaching. A variety of language presentation contexts and an ample supply of videos will help keep pupils engaged and motivated.

Seamlessly integrated external exams preparation and a complete assessment package will help your pupils get results and prepare for future exams.

Jordan Team Together has also been created with busy teachers in mind. At-a-glance organisation of materials within the Teacher's Book will help you find all the necessary information such as answer keys and audioscripts, but it will also give you ideas on how to extend Pupil's Book activities and adapt them to your pupils' level.

Course features

Vocabulary

Each unit starts with an eye-catching visual presentation of the target vocabulary, which gets pupils' attention right from the start. The visual presentation serves a variety of purposes:

- · to present new vocabulary in context
- to revise previously learnt vocabulary (Stopwatch feature 💍
- to offer speaking practice for both everyday communication purposes as well as external exams preparation
- to set the scene for the story in the next lesson.

It is followed by engaging step-by-step vocabulary presentation. As well as being close to pupils' interests, vocabulary sets reflect external exams topic areas.

The *Think!* feature at the start of the unit allows for quick revision of the lexical items that pupils are very likely to know from previous learning, which is a great confidence-booster.

The Communicate \bigcap activities effectively help pupils start using English in meaningful contexts from the very beginning.

Each Pupil's Book lesson has a corresponding Activity Book lesson allowing for a lot of additional vocabulary practice. Content from the main lessons is complemented by *Extra practice* and *Vocabulary reference* sections at the end of each unit.

Grammar

Grammar structures are taught in a clear, scaffolded, step-by-step approach in every unit. The new structures presentation is contextualised through the song and the story. Grammar boxes on the Pupil's Book page contain clear, pupil-friendly examples of the target structures and provide a reference point for pupils as they learn and practise.

The structures presented in the grammar boxes are also recorded and serve as a model for the correct pronunciation.

Further consolidation practice is available in the Activity Book, both in the corresponding lesson activities as well as in the *Extra practice* and *Grammar reference* sections at the end of each unit.

Stories

Jordan Team Together Grade 5 stories feature a group of inquiry-minded children, who are keen on Science and learning new things. They call themselves The Discovery Team.

Millie and Katy are sisters who make friends with their new neighbour, a Jordanian boy called Hamed. Together, they form The Discovery Team and learn new things in each episode.

Each story has been built around a specific concept from common Social Studies and Science curricula. To explore this concept further, please see the teaching notes for Lesson 3 in each unit.

Skills

All four skills are practised throughout *Jordan Team Together*, with a dedicated Skills section in Lessons 11 and 12 of each unit.

Special focus has been put on writing: pupils are given a model text and a scaffolded, step-by-step support to create their own pieces of writing. Further support is to be found in the Activity Book.

The speaking skill is practised through a variety of contexts:

- Most lessons end with a Communicate activity where pupils can put the newly acquired content into practice and personalise it
- Lesson 7 contains an information gap activity which provides a fun and motivating way to get pupils to speak in a less controlled manner
- Lesson 10, English in action, is dedicated to teaching functional
 language, which is key to successful social interaction. Exposing pupils
 to this language right from the start ensures that they not only acquire
 knowledge of grammar and vocabulary but also learn what to say in a
 variety of situations, such as asking the way or calling the emergency
 services.

Introduction

Culture

Learning a foreign language includes exposure to vocabulary and grammar, but it isn't complete without information about the culture of countries where that language is spoken.

The Culture sections in Jordan Team Together are designed in such a way as to bring that information closer to pupils in a friendly manner.

Learning Club: Language Booster and CLIL

After every two units of the Pupil's Book, there is a Learning Club section. This consists of a Language Booster lesson and a CLIL lesson.

The Language Booster lesson consolidates and extends language and topics taught in the preceding unit.

The CLIL sections in *Jordan Team Together* Grade 5 help pupils learn key concepts of English and Social Studies and Science in a more integrated manner.

In addition to this, each story in *Jordan Team Together* Grade 5 has been built around a key concept from common Social Studies or Science curricula. To explore this concept further, please see the teaching notes for Lesson 3 in each unit.

External exams preparation

Jordan Team Together provides a lot of opportunities to get pupils acquainted with the format of external exams. Cambridge English Qualifications exam type tasks, marked with the symbol, are seamlessly integrated into the core material, providing practice in an unthreatening manner.

The *Get ready for...* section at the end of each unit both in the Pupil's Book and Activity Book focuses specifically on exam practice.

Jordan Team Together fully prepares learners for Cambridge English Qualifications Pre A1 Starters, A1 Movers and A2 Flyers. As well as exam task-type practice, all vocabulary and structures are covered in the series.

The series also exposes pupils to exam task types in the A2 Key for Schools and B1 Preliminary for Schools.

21st century skills

One of the features of *Jordan Team Together* is the focus on 21st century skills, which are a must for today's learners to allow them to thrive and succeed in the modern world. Pupils need to learn more than just vocabulary and grammar; they need to learn critical thinking and problem-solving, creativity, communication and collaboration. Many of the activities in *Jordan Team Together* serve both purposes — as pupils put new knowledge into practice, they also work on the development of their 21st century skills. These activities are easily identifiable with the following icons:



Critical thinking
Problem-solving



Communication
Collaboration



Creativity

Other 21st century skills covered in Jordan Team Together include:

Social and cultural awareness: Lesson 9 of each unit enables pupils to learn about other countries and, through a project, reflect on how their own country is similar or different.

Curiosity and Initiative: In the project work, pupils are encouraged to find information, make decisions and present their opinions.

Assessment for learning: see page 11 for more information.

Literacy, Numeracy, Scientific Literacy: These are covered through a wide range of topics covered in the series as well as through work on specific areas such as development of the reading and writing skills.

ICT Literacy: In the project work, pupils are encouraged to use a variety of materials and sources, which include web searches and work with modern technologies.

Support for mixed-ability classes

Jordan Team Together supports teachers who work with mixed-ability classes in a number of ways. The Teacher's Book includes teaching tips for mixed-ability classes, labelled Diversity: Support/Challenge and Extra activity: Fast finishers.

The photocopiable resources include extra worksheets for grammar, vocabulary, CLIL, English in action, songs and communication lessons to help teachers cater for the different needs of their pupils. In addition, there are photocopiable worksheets to accompany the reading and listening tasks in the Skills lessons, which are available at two levels: support and challenge. They give the teacher an opportunity to work with mixed-ability pupils in the classroom and make the core material in the Pupil's Book more suitable to individual pupils.

There are also extra photocopiable resources at the back of the Teacher's Book which facilitate some of the teaching techniques, extra activity ideas and game ideas detailed in this introduction.

Course components

Pupil's Book

The Pupil's Book provides a variety of materials to present the target language effectively. It includes an introductory unit (*Welcome*), four main units and two additional units related to festivals: *Harvest Festival, World Water Day.*







Teacher's Book

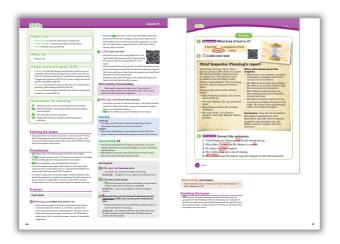
The Teacher's Book provides step-by-step lesson plans covering all the course material. Each lesson plan is clearly structured into stages:

- Starting the lesson
- Presentation
- Practice
- · Finishing the lesson.

Additional ideas for Extension, TPR and 21st century skills activities, as well as suggestions on how to support or challenge mixed-ability pupils are an excellent tool for busy teachers who may lack time for planning.

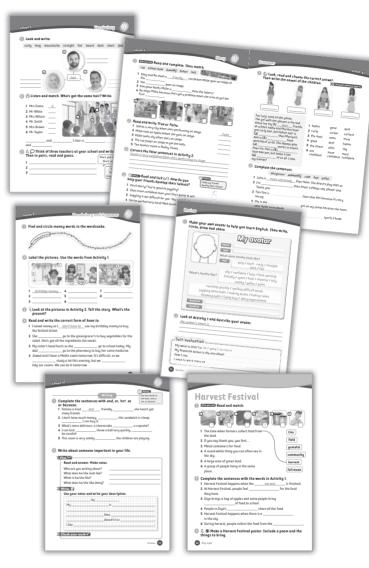
The Teacher's Book introduction includes recommended procedures for effective use of games, posters and stories and also contains tips on working with mixed-ability groups.

The mapping to the English Language Standards and Performance Indicators Framework for Jordanian learners can be found on page 150.



Activity Book

The Activity Book provides reinforcement and consolidation of the language presented in the Pupil's Book. It contains controlled and freer practice plus personalisation and further listening and reading activities. It also contains an *Extra practice* section for further consolidation of vocabulary and grammar, a Vocabulary and Grammar reference and a *Get ready for...* section for further external exams practice.



Class Audio

The Class Audio MP3s contain all the recordings for the Pupil's Book and Activity Book. They also contain karaoke versions of all the songs. In order to facilitate using the audio materials, all recordings are appropriately numbered on the pages of the Pupil's Book and the Activity Book. All audio for the series can be found online.

Tests

Upon completion of each unit of the Pupil's Book, the teacher is able to check the progress pupils are making by using a test. There are tests to use at the end of a unit as well as for the end of each semester and the end of the school year. All these tests are available in two versions: Standard (A) and Challenge (B) so as to allow teachers for more flexibility with mixed-ability classes.

The worksheets and audio are available online.

Photocopiable resources

The Photocopiable resources contain consolidation and extension worksheets for further practice of vocabulary, grammar, CLIL, English in action and songs. There are also worksheets to accompany the reading and listening tasks in the Skills lessons, which are available at two levels: support and challenge. They are all available online.

Presentation tool

The presentation tool offers teachers an interactive version of the Pupil's Book with integrated answers, audio, video and classroom tools. Teachers can navigate the material using the interactive lesson flow or traditional page view. The planning area gives a useful overview with both teacher's notes and activity previews.

The presentation tool is also available offline.

Online practice and pupil resources

Pupils can do games and extra practice online, with a digital 'gradebook' for teachers to monitor progress. There is also a Pupil's Book eBook and more.

Posters

The Posters designed for *Jordan Team Together* are a great visual aid for presenting or consolidating vocabulary.

The level-specific posters are created from the unit opener illustrations and provide a lot of opportunities for revision and speaking practice.

The Classroom posters contain five posters that can be used with any level of the course. The pack is comprised of the Alphabet, Numbers, Classroom language, Months and seasons and Common irregular verbs posters.

The 'How to work with posters' section on page 18 details a variety of suggestions of how the

posters can be used.

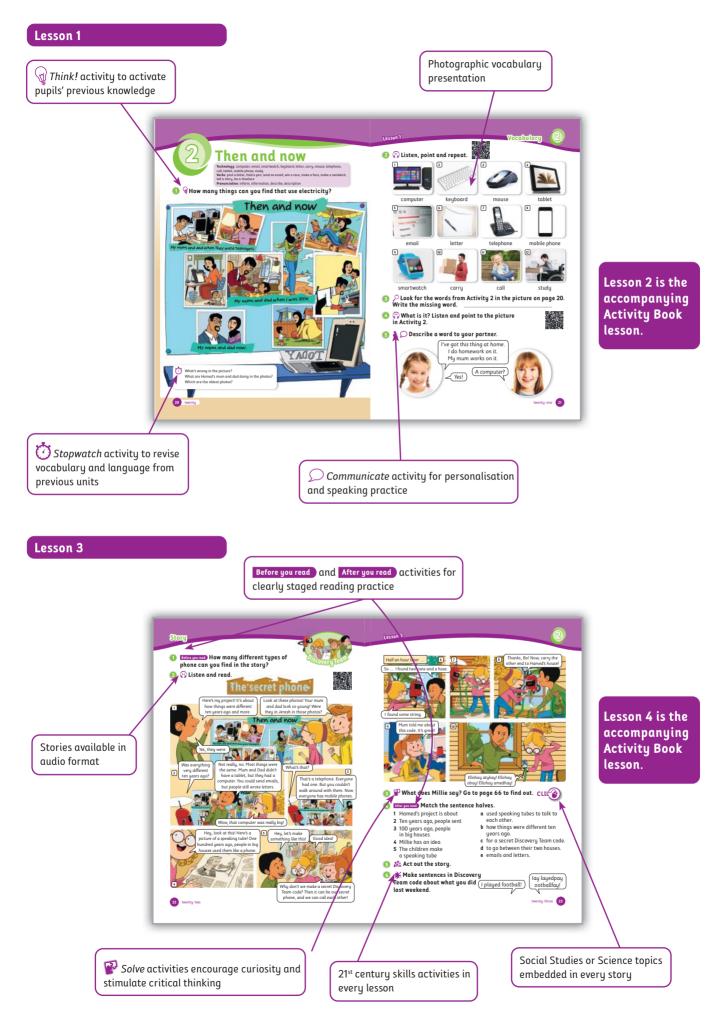




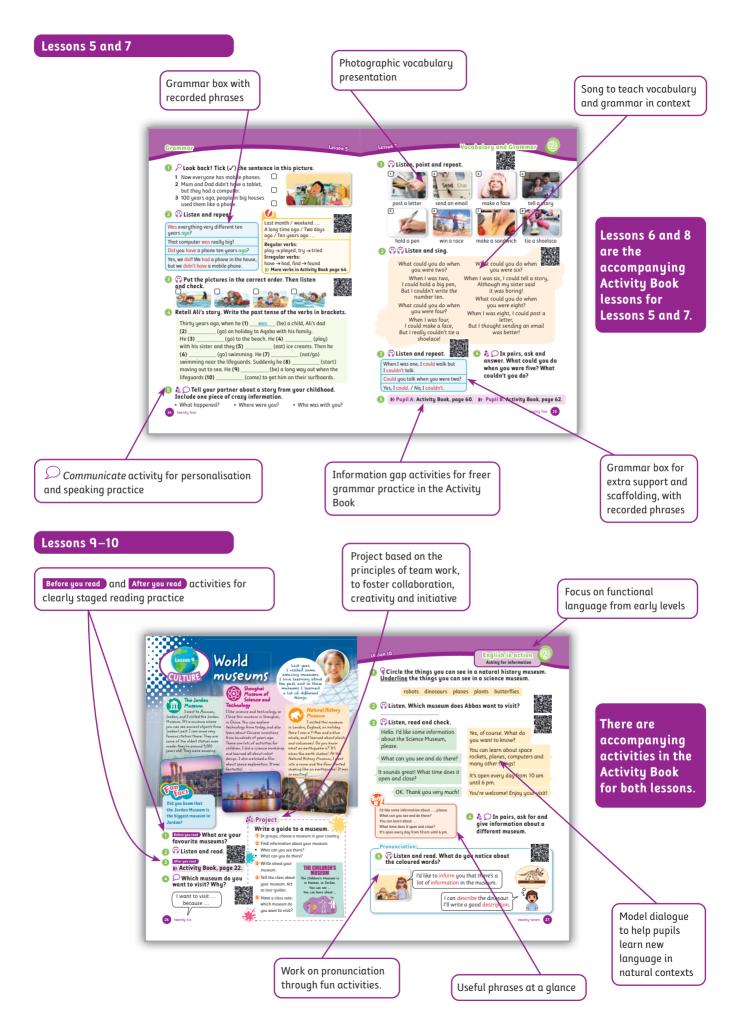
There are 14 lessons in each main unit. The lesson division is as below:

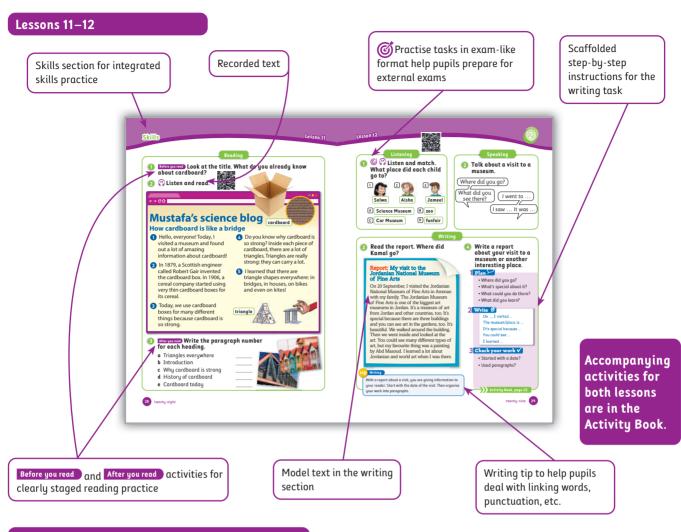
Lesson	Component and focus
1	Pupil's Book Vocabulary
2	Activity Book Vocabulary
3	Pupil's Book Story
4	Activity Book Story
5	Pupil's Book Grammar
6	Activity Book Grammar
7	Pupil's Book Vocabulary and Grammar
8	Activity Book Vocabulary and Grammar
9	Pupil's Book and Activity Book Culture / Pupil's Book project
10	Pupil's Book and Activity Book English in action and Pronunciation
11	Pupil's Book and Activity Book Reading
12	Pupil's Book and Activity Book Listening, Speaking and Writing
13	Pupil's Book and Activity Book Review
14	Pupil's Book and Activity Book Get ready for

Unit walkthrough

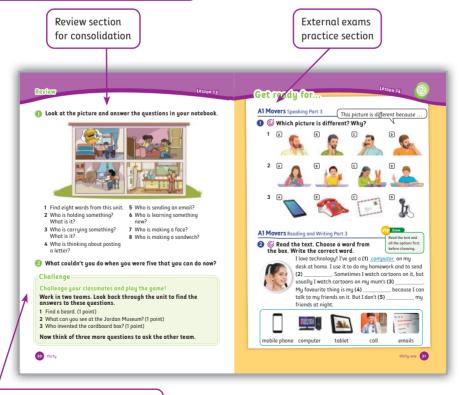


Introduction





Lesson 13 / Review and Lesson 14 / Get ready for...



There are accompanying activities for both lessons in the Activity Book.

Collaborative task for engaging and motivating revision; additional self-assessment activity: Progress path, after every two units.

Monitoring progress and exam readiness with Jordan Team Together

Jordan Team Together can be used for all general English courses. It can also be used to prepare pupils for external exams including Cambridge English Qualifications and PTE Young Learners. Jordan Team Together provides teachers and institutions with the GSE tools that enable them to demonstrate visibility of pupil progress step by step, and a way of identifying and addressing learner needs and supporting the achievement of goals whether these be general or exam related.

Jordan Team Together is additionally aligned to English Benchmark which can provide an independent measure of learner proficiency and formative information to support planning and next steps.

The table below indicates the correlation between the course and various international frameworks and tests.

	GSE	CEFR	PTE YL	English Benchmark	Cambridge English Qualifications
Starter	10-22	Pre A1			
Level 1	17–29	Pre A1/A1	Firstwords	Level 1	Pre A1 Starters
Level 2	20-32	A1	Springboard	Level 2	
Level 3	24-39	A1/A2	Quickmarch	Level 3	A1 Movers
Level 4	30-43	A2/A2+	Quickmarch/ Breakthrough	Level 3/4	
Level 5	33-46	A2/B1	Breakthrough	Level 5	A2 Flyers and A2 Key for Schools
Level 6	36-50	A2+/B1			A2 Key for Schools and B1 Preliminary for Schools

The Global Scale of English



The Global Scale of English (GSE) is a standardised, granular scale which measures English language proficiency. Unlike some other frameworks which describe attainment in broad bands, the Global Scale of English identifies what a learner can do at each point on the scale across speaking, listening, reading and writing skills.

The scale is designed to motivate learners by giving a more granular insight into their progress. Teachers can use the Global Scale of English to match a pupil to the right course materials for their exact level and learning goals.

The badging above and on the back of your book shows the range of objectives that are covered within the content. Knowing this range helps you select course materials with the right level of support and challenge for your pupils to help them progress. It does not mean that pupils need to have mastered all the objectives below the range before starting the course, or that they will all be 'at' the top of the range by the end.

For more information about how using the GSE can support your planning and teaching, the assessment of your learners, and in selecting or creating additional materials to supplement your core programme, please go to www.english.com/gse.

What is English Benchmark?

English Benchmark is a motivating English test for young learners aged 6–13, which proves pupils' English abilities to parents, monitors learning progress and ensures teaching targets the right skills. English Benchmark measures pupils' speaking, listening, reading and writing skills through fun and interactive tablet-based activities, with immediate detailed reports for teachers and parents that include pupils' strengths, suggestions for improvement and recommended activities to improve their skills.

English Benchmark and *Jordan Team Together* make the perfect partners for your language and learning assessment. As your pupils learn with *Jordan Team Together*, you can use the English Benchmark tests to measure their progress. After pupils have taken their test, you will see recommendations of which lessons to teach next in order to focus on the areas that need improvement.

In order to show progress, learners should take the test at least once at the start and once at the end of the year. If possible, teachers could ask learners to take the test again half way through the year or at the end of each semester to check they are on track.

by Magdalena Custodio Espinar

Formative assessment / Assessment for learning

Assessment and evaluation are frequently used as interchangeable terms. However, assessment is focused on pupils' learning, whereas evaluation is focused on learning programmes and any or all their components (objectives, syllabus, teaching and assessment methods, materials, etc.).

In the classroom, what clearly differentiates these two terms is the use made of the information and data obtained from assessment or from evaluation. If you use it to improve the teaching and learning process, you are developing formative assessment, or assessment for learning. If you use it to grade or measure the quality of the learning, you are developing summative assessment. This means that the same assessment tools can be summative or formative depending on the type of information they provide and the use that is made of it.

Formative assessment, or assessment for learning, is "the process of seeking and interpreting evidence for use by learners and their teachers, to identify where the learners are in their learning, where they need to go and how best to get there" (Assessment Reform Group, 2008). This process requires alternative assessment tools likely to be shared by teachers and pupils which are used as an ongoing process, which are flexible and adapted to the individual needs of pupils and which quarantee that all the pupils engage in the learning process.

Here are some suggestions on how to use these types of tools to implement assessment for learning in your classroom.

Main strategies of formative assessment

The main stages of the formative assessment process are:

- 1 Setting the aims and criteria for success
- 2 Monitoring pupils' learning, including giving constructive feedback
- 3 Peer learning
- 4 Independent learning/long-term assessment

Setting aims and criteria

If you want your pupils to be successful in the learning process, you need to tell them what it is that they are going to learn and what you expect of them in terms of performance. At the beginning of each lesson, the teacher should tell the pupils what they are going to learn. This can be done by using key questions which are meant to inspire pupils' curiosity, interest and engagement.

Monitoring pupils' learning

This stage of assessment is used to achieve the following goals:

- · to adjust ongoing teaching and learning
- to increase the level of interaction and provide for feedback loops during questioning
- to improve pupils' achievement of intended outcomes.

Tools that can be used for monitoring pupils' learning are:

- Lollipop stick technique or Random selection tool. Use sticks or cards
 that pupils can personalise with their names at the beginning of the
 school year. Pick them randomly to call on pupils for questions thus
 ensuring that all pupils have an active role and will produce a similar
 amount of language, because pupil talking time (PTT) matters!
- Basketball technique. Use this for choosing pupils at random to answer questions, to get feedback for an activity or to ask for opinions. Throw a soft ball to a pupil. The pupil who catches the ball then responds. Continue with other pupils as necessary. This ensures that all pupils have an active role.

- Happy/Sad face technique. (also Yes/No, Stop/Go, True/False).
 Use this for critical thinking development and yes/no answers.
 Make a set of cards with a happy face on one side, and a sad face on the other one for each pupil or pupils can make their own.
 After practising a skill, ask pupils how they feel they are doing.
 Alternatively, pupils can show this on a scale from 1–5 using the fingers on their hands for a deeper understanding of the yes and no answers. Photocopiable cards can be found on page 157.
- Traffic light cards. Use them to check that pupils know what to do
 on a given task. Pupils show you a green/yellow/red card, depending
 on their level of confidence. Photocopiable cards can be found on
 page 158.
- Exit slips. Use them to evaluate your lessons at the end of the day
 or session, to get feedback from the lesson, or to offer pupils the
 opportunity to give opinions. Exit slips can simply be post-it notes
 stuck on the door on their way out of class.

Other types of assessment tools you can use during instruction are those oriented towards helping you actively observe the different skills and competences that your pupils are developing while they are working in class.

- Checklists. These are very useful to assess different tasks or different stages of the same task at the same time. Taking note of your pupils' performance on the spot will provide you with objective evidence of their true level of competence.
- Observation forms. The teacher collects data on pupils' work by filling in observation forms or reading written assignments to adjust teaching procedures where necessary.
- Video/audio recordings. These are excellent tools to observe your pupils from a different perspective and analyse their strengths and weaknesses, behaviour and classroom relationships in depth. [Be aware that you may need parental permission to record children.]

Peer learning

Working together in pairs or groups gives pupils an opportunity to share knowledge and also learn from their classmates.

Tools that can be used for peer work and peer learning are:

- Think-pair-share. Pupils work on their own, then they discuss their ideas in pairs and finally they present their ideas to a group or the whole class.
- Two stars and a wish. Pupils say two positive things about the work of their partner and suggest one area for improvement.
- Expert envoy. This is a tool to use with mixed-ability classes. If you
 have pupils who are strong in some areas, you may choose them to
 be the 'experts' for their class or group and ask them to help their
 classmates.
- Three facts and a fib. Pupils write three true statements and one
 false statement about the topic of a lesson and share them with other
 pupils/pairs/groups to see if they can identify the false information.
 This technique can also be used in a summative evaluation at the end of
 a longer learning process, e.g. a unit.

Checklists and video recordings can also be used as peer learning tools.

Introduction

Independent learning and long-term formative assessment

Long-term formative assessment tools are used to improve the following areas of your assessment practice:

- for the pupils to develop critical thinking skills about their own performance
- to promote collaboration
- to improve pupils' achievement of intended instructional outcomes.

Performance-based teaching and learning impacts strongly on the way we carry out assessment by helping pupils become autonomous and independent learners aware of the process by which they learn as well as their learning goals.

Some of the long-term assessment tools you can use in your classes are:

- Summative and thought-provoking questions. At the end of a lesson or a unit; pupils are asked to reflect on their learning process and to try to self-assess their performance by answering the following questions: What have I learnt? What do I need to work on? I can I'm (not) good at
- Portfolios. Pupils are given the responsibility of selecting which
 pieces of work they produce should be placed in their portfolios to
 demonstrate how they are improving.
- Checklists. These are used to assess pupils' completion of a task. They
 are not rating scales and they only include Yes/No or V/X descriptors.
- Projects. Pupils present what they know through pictures and texts such as essays, research reports or long-term projects.
- Pupil Travel journals/Learning diaries. Pupils create their own books, in which they chart the journey of their learning.
- Rubrics. They can be used when evaluating pupil performance or work resulting from a performance task. For further details see helow

It is very important to remember that before this type of assessment is implemented in the classroom, a supportive classroom environment is created and pupils are given guidance on how to reflect upon and evaluate their own performance as well as that of their peers.

Using rubrics for assessment in CLIL

Rubrics can be very useful tools to help CLIL teachers fulfil the requirements of assessment practice in bilingual contexts. There are many reasons to use them, but these are the most important ones:

- firstly, because they suit the CLIL dual approach (content learning and language development);
- secondly, because they allow for performance-based assessment to provide qualitative feedback connected to the assessment criteria;
- thirdly, because they tell teachers, pupils and parents in advance what needs to be done to successfully perform the task;
- finally, because they give teachers and pupils a sense of direction and a context to share the learning goals from the beginning of the teaching and learning process.

Language should not be an invisible component in the bilingual classroom. Teachers in bilingual schools should be aware of the language proficiency of their pupils and systematically conduct language demands analyses of the content to provide appropriate scaffolding. Since not all pupils in the same class have the same language proficiency, effective assessment in CLIL should measure pupils' progress in the foreign language at different levels and along distinct learning paths. Rubrics are a tool that can help teachers achieve this goal of effective assessment of content, language and process in an integrated way.

Rubrics are scoring guides, which include several assessment criteria to evaluate pupils' performance or work resulting from a performance task. In this sense, they are different from checklists because they are rating scales, which means that they not only contain a list of items to be checked but they also include a range of marks to assess how well each item has been performed. These rating scales can be holistic or analytic.

Holistic rubrics

All criteria are evaluated simultaneously at a unidimensional level because each level of the rubric (1, 2, 3) includes all the descriptors for the different criteria assessed (for content, language and delivery).

Holistic Rubric

Oral Presentations	The three descriptors are assessed at the same time.
Accomplished (Level 1): content, language and delivery	Stays on topic all the time and speaks clearly. Body language is appropriate.
Developing (Level 2): content, language and delivery	Stays on topic most of the time and speaks clearly but mispronounces some words. Body language is appropriate most of the time.
Beginning (Level 3): content, language and delivery	It was hard to tell what the topic was. Often mumbles or cannot be understood. Body language is not appropriate most of the time.

Holistic rubrics provide an overall evaluation of quality, proficiency and understanding, thus the feedback is limited because the descriptors are not analysed in detail. This means that errors are tolerated, and no correct answer is expected. Also, the scoring process is faster.

Analytic rubrics

Each criterion is evaluated separately at a multidimensional level because each criterion of the rubric (to assess content, language and delivery) includes several descriptors at different levels of performance of the task

Analytic rubric

Oral presentations Criteria/ performance	Beginning (Level 3)	Developing (Level 2)	Accomplished (Level 1)
Content	Does not seem to understand the topic very well. It was hard to tell what the topic was.	Shows a good understanding of parts of the topic. Stays on topic some (50–89%) of the time.	Shows a full understanding of the topic. Stays on topic all (90–100%) of the time.
Language	Often mumbles or cannot be understood OR mispronounces more than five words.	Speaks clearly and distinctly most (75–94%) of the time. Mispronounces no more than five words.	Speaks clearly and distinctly all (95–100%) of the time and mispronounces no words.
Delivery	Slouches and/or does not look at people during the presentation.	Sometimes stands up straight and establishes eye contact.	Stands up straight, looks relaxed and confident. Establishes eye contact with everyone in the room during the presentation.

Analytic rubrics provide detailed information from the defined performance levels. This means that a significant degree of feedback is provided. However, the scoring process is slower.

The use of each type of rubric will depend on the nature of the task and other factors such as the time available, the need for substantial feedback, the number of pupils, different language/competence levels in the group and the assessment goal: holistic rubrics should be used for overall scores and analytic ones when detailed feedback on each criterion is desired

For your rubrics to be valid, reliable and fair, there must be a coherent connection between the learning goals and the task, the learning goals and the assessment criteria, and the descriptors with each assessment criterion.

Steps to make a rubric

Here are some steps to be followed when making rubrics to assess pupils in CLIL classrooms.

- First, begin by designing an authentic task likely to help pupils 1) learn
 the curricular content, 2) develop the necessary language to learn
 about that content and 3) achieve the given learning goals and key
 competences at the pupils' level, e.g. Create a questionnaire about a
 local festival or a national celebration.
- Next, define the criteria to assess pupils' learning from this task.
 These assessment criteria will be the reference points to describe the acceptable level of performance of the task, e.g.
 - pupils know about the festival (their level of comprehension of the subject);
 - pupils are able to write questions about the festival (type of questions; tenses; number; etc.);
 - pupils are able to work in groups to create a questionnaire (contributions; quality of work; time management; attitude; etc.)
- Use the CEFR charts or the Global Scale of English (english.com/GSE) to measure learner progress on the language proficiency scale and get your assessment criteria for language from their available descriptors. Using these scales as a reference is useful for understanding your pupils' levels of proficiency more precisely, to monitor pupils' progress in a more accurate way and to make more informed choices in selecting materials or assessments, e.g. Speaking: Can ask someone simple questions about their life and experiences, GSE 37/A2(+); Can summarise the key information in basic diagrams, e.g. bar charts, timelines, GSE 54/B1(+).
- Then use a cognitive taxonomy to identify the cognitive domain and skill that your tasks involve, e.g. "interpret the information collected from the questionnaires" involves applying knowledge. Then write differentiating descriptors as you move on the scale from lower order thinking skills (LOTs) to higher order thinking skills (HOTs), e.g. the information is used to create a graph but not clearly displayed; the information is used and displayed in a graph but there are some mistakes in the interpretation of data; the information is clearly displayed and interpreted.
- Once you have defined the assessment criteria and identified possible descriptors of performance, you can:
 - make a holistic rubric, then write descriptors incorporating all criteria in each descriptor.
 - create an analytic rubric, then write descriptors for each individual criterion.
- Check that the criteria and descriptors you have included in your rubric assess pupils' content, process and language learning at the right level.
- Finally, adapt the format of the rubric to the age and language
 proficiency of your pupils and plan carefully the structure of the
 rubric. You may wish to leave space at the bottom of the rubric to write
 comments, add signatures, stickers, parental feedback, etc.

After having used teacher-made rubrics for some time, pupils may feel ready to have an active role in this process and create their own rubrics and checklists as guidelines for goal setting. Train your pupils to do it and they will develop a very important key competence: learning to learn

How to work with projects

by Magdalena Custodio Espinar

One of the key factors affecting children's ability to learn cooperation and collaboration is the type of situations they face. In other words, pupils will not learn how to be a reliable team player if they aren't exposed to tasks that require team work. There are many ways to organise pupil interaction in class and the most popular ones are collaborative and cooperative work. These two interaction systems may seem interchangeable but there are some clear differences between them:

Collaborative work

- Group goal
- · Learning takes place in a group
- The final product is co-constructed
- Roles/responsibilities are flexible and agreed
- · The process is important

Cooperative work

- Individual goals within the group
- · Learning is an individual process
- · The final product consists of individual contributions
- Roles and responsibilities are usually pre-defined
- The final product is important

When working on projects, collaborative work is the preferred system, giving pupils an opportunity to share ideas, verbalise opinions and interact with other classmates. Thanks to this, a real communicative context is developed in the classroom during which pupils must listen to each other and reach an agreement to create a common product.

To apply successful project work in the classroom, you should:

- Keep a flexible project schedule and involve pupils in project design when possible. Promote parent involvement.
- Prepare pupils by having them think about the project in advance.
 A rubric can be very useful to show them what they are aiming for and trying to accomplish. Use negotiation strategies to help them understand the rationale for this type of work.
- Establish moments for feedback and specific products at the end of each work session to promote a sense of mission, e.g. record evidence of progress using field notes or observation templates. Keep records public so pupils have ownership of them by using rubrics or checklists.
- Avoid making decisions for pupils. It will take time for pupils to be able
 to develop time management skills and learning to learn competence.
 Promote this by providing them with support during the project, e.g.
 a timeline with the work sessions; worksheets with instructions or
 steps to follow; a project goals checklist to tick; a webquest to develop
 critical thinking skills, etc.
- Assess the quality of projects by using professional work as a reference. Boost the quality of your pupils' work by showing them good examples of other pupils' work. Develop scaffolding to help pupils reach the standards and include both individual and group grades.
- Promote full participation by using a checklist for active observation
 of pupils that will give you objective evidence of their performance.
 Set realistic alternatives and consequences for non-participation
 such as suggesting individual ways of working on the project, negative
 individual grades, etc.
- Foster reflection strategies both for the process and for the final product from a critical point of view to improve future performance.

When deciding on how to group your pupils, you should consider your rationale so as to group pupils according to the right criterion. Here are some ideas to arrange your class for group and project work.

Grouping for leadership. If you have passive pupils who need someone monitoring and taking control of their active contribution in group work, pre-assign groups and make sure these pupils share groups with class leaders (those pupils who are more skilled or have more knowledge).

Random selection groups. If the task does not require specific pupils to be separate or together, you can simply put the groups in alphabetical order, take their names from a bag or hat, use a pack of cards (group them based on having black or red cards, cards in a specific order, the same numbers ...) or word-family cards, synonym word cards, date of birth, etc.

Then, you can rotate some members to create new groups. Turn and talk (front row/back row) for a quick group task is also a possibility.

If you are familiar with your pupils' interests, e.g. football teams, make cards with the names of the most popular players and use them to make the 'football teams'. You can do this with popular films, TV series and cartoons of their interest.

Grouping by interest. Have your pupils complete a survey and group them based on their responses. You can also design the task according to different interests and give pupils the opportunity to join a group according to their personal interest or expectations of the task, e.g. in a presentation about their hometown, pupils interested in history can focus on historical buildings and pupils interested in sports can focus on stadiums and sports facilities.

How to work with mixed ability groups

by Magdalena Custodio Espinar

Teaching and learning EFL or CLIL involves many different processes such as recording observations, presentation of ideas, argumentation, modelling constructions and explanations, arriving at conclusions, obtaining, evaluating and communicating information . . . in English! This is a very rich and complex communicative context which requires both cognitive and language skills for learning to occur.

Pupils' engagement in the learning process can be increased significantly by analysing in advance the linguistic and cognitive demands of every task. This analysis will allow teachers to provide pupils with the necessary scaffolding to encourage them to actively participate in the lesson, regardless of the language level of that pupil.

Language scaffolding

In EFL and CLIL, language is used for learning and communicating. This means that it is necessary to scaffold the input (the language pupils receive), the intake (the information they process) and the output (the language they are able to produce after this information processing) to ensure an effective interaction. This scaffolding is very important because the interaction promotes the necessary feedback to connect the input received and the output produced in a meaningful way by pupils. This is called interlanguage development and it is a key factor of content learning and language development.

To identify the necessary scaffolding for our pupils, we can conduct a language demands analysis. It consists of identifying and describing in advance different types of language involved in CLIL lessons and performance-based tasks: language of learning, language for learning and language through learning (Coyle, Hood, Marsh, 2010).

Language of learning refers to the language connected with the content being learnt. Pupils will learn it to access new knowledge, e.g. learning about sound: high/low pitch, tone, volume, etc.

Language for learning is the language necessary to perform the communicative functions of the learning context. If pupils need to compare the waves of the sound in a graph, do they know the comparative and superlative form of adjectives? If not, scaffolding is required to complete this task.

Language through learning refers to language learnt due to cognitive and academic development. Each pupil will develop this type of language during the learning process in close relation to their individual cognitive development by interacting with the resources (personal, digital, etc.) and completing the tasks.

Analysing the linguistic demands of the content and the task will allow teachers to provide pupils with suitable scaffolding strategies likely to promote interaction and feedback in the classroom. In the previous example the teacher can provide oral scaffolding by displaying visual aids such as word cards for the language of learning and the comparative and superlative structure on a poster to help pupils interact (compare the waves of the sound).

In addition, a cognitive taxonomy provides a hierarchy of thinking skills organised from lower order thinking skills (LOTs, e.g. identify) to higher order thinking skills (HOTs, e.g. compare). Bloom's revised taxonomy comprises six cognitive domains involving cognitive skills such as remembering, understanding, applying, analysing, evaluating and creating. Using a taxonomy will allow teachers to adapt the degree of difficulty of the activities they plan from a cognitive point of view by identifying the cognitive domain and skill they demand. It will also help them develop a 'continuum of practice' of always going from LOTs to HOTs, thus starting at pupils' present cognitive level (because, for example, you cannot apply if you do not first understand and remember).

Differentiated learning

Using a taxonomy to prepare your lessons can help them be more effective and flexible and, therefore, more likely to be learnt by all the pupils. Here are some examples of strategies to cope with mixed-ability pupils in the classroom.

- Low level pupils are a majority. Since a taxonomy is a hierarchy of cognitive skills, we must try to extend children's thinking skills from LOTs to HOTs by practising first at lower levels (remembering and understanding) and progressively moving towards higher levels (applying, analysing, evaluating and creating). Therefore, if the average level of the class is very low, we will have to take this into account and provide them with more activities from the lower levels at the beginning and gradually include some of higher levels.
- High level pupils are a majority. If the average of the class is very high, you should try to provide them with more activities from the higher levels in order to ensure a motivating and challenging context.
- Heterogeneous pupils. Prepare activities at lower levels (remembering and understanding) for some children and activities at higher levels to work and practise the same content at the same time. For example, list the main stages of metamorphosis (LOT); find out and describe the main stages of metamorphosis (HOT).
- Fast finishers. All pupils work first on the same set of activities, then
 pupils who finish earlier can design their own activities at a higher
 level. You can teach them to use the taxonomy for this purpose.
- Gifted pupils with a special curricular adaptation. Prepare compulsory activities for all the children at lower levels and voluntary activities for 'those who want to go further'. This strategy will provide more pupils with the opportunity to do the higher order activities and will allow the teacher to include different activities for the class and for the gifted pupils in an easy and unforced manner. For example, prepare a set of activities from different levels about the properties of light, then offer the possibility to investigate what a shadow is, when it can be seen, why it changes length, etc. You can give pupils a book or website, etc. for them to find out about it.

How to work with stories

Stage 1 - Before listening to the story

First, talk to pupils about the characters appearing in the story and about the places in which they appear. Ask pupils what they can see in the pictures and invite them to guess what will happen in the story. Remember to praise pupils for all their ideas, but do not correct them and do not explain too much. (In a moment pupils will listen to the recording and check if they were right). At the beginning of the school year, you may wish to ask questions in L1, little by little switching to English. Focus more on what occurred in the story than on the language itself. First, pupils will understand the story as a whole, then they will remember the vocabulary used in the story.

Stage 2 - Listening to the story

At this stage, remember to encourage pupils to compare their previous ideas with what actually happened in the story. Play the recorded story and ask pupils to point to the appropriate pictures in the Pupil's Book.

Stage 3 - After listening to the story

After listening to the story together, ask pupils a few questions about it to make sure that they understood what happened.

When answering, pupils additionally practise and consolidate the previously introduced language material. At this stage it is best to speak English.

Stage 4 - Acting out

After having listened to the story a few times, your pupils should be ready to act it out. Pupils can contribute to the story, first by making particular gestures and then, depending on the difficulty of the text, by using simple phrases. You may also play particular parts of the recording and ask pupils to repeat them each time.

Next, you may divide pupils into groups and ask each of them to say the lines of one character. Under the teacher's supervision and on the basis of the pictures, pupils quote the lines of appropriate characters. To make this exercise more interesting, you can bring items to be used as props.

Suggested exercises

- Ask pupils to draw a scene from the story they have heard.
- Ask pupils to invent another ending for the story they have heard.
- Pupils draw their favourite character.
- Talk to pupils about what the characters learnt.
- Ask pupils about the way they would behave or feel if they were one
 of the characters.
- Read some lines from the story. Pupils should provide the name of the character who says the lines.
- Ask pupils to create their own story on the same theme, with themselves as the characters. A photocopiable blank storyboard can be found on page 159.

How to work with posters

Posters can be a powerful and engaging tool for presenting or consolidating the language covered in the Pupil's Book.

In Jordan Team Together Grade 5, there are five full-colour vocabulary posters featuring the main characters of this level. Each poster can be used for presentation or revision of the first set of vocabulary from each unit.

The generic Classroom posters can be used with any level of the course.

The pack is comprised of the Alphabet, Numbers, Classroom language, Months and seasons and Common irregular verbs posters.



Techniques of working with posters

Stick the poster to the wall in a visible place. In this way it will remind pupils of the material they have covered.

Predicting

In order to create the atmosphere of anticipation and to invoke curiosity in children, before you show the pupils a poster, give them its title. Tell pupils that in a moment they will see a poster with e.g. toys. Ask pupils to think about the vocabulary which may be presented in the poster. Encourage pupils to provide examples of particular words related to this thematic group. In the case of toys it will be a teddy, a doll, a ball, a kite, etc. Then, stick the poster to the wall and check together how many words the pupils predicted correctly.

Asking questions

Point to the objects, persons, colours, etc. presented in the poster and $% \left(1\right) =\left(1\right) \left(1\right) \left$ ask questions: What's this? What colour is it? How many (balls) can you see? Is it a (doll)?, etc.

Finding and pointing

Ask individual pupils to come to the poster, find and point to appropriate objects, e.g. Point to the (red car), etc. You may also divide pupils into two teams and change finding particular elements into an exciting competition. Ask one person from the team to come to the poster and find a particular object. If he/she does it correctly, the team scores

a point. If he/she makes a mistake, another team takes a turn. Pupils may replace the teacher and give the commands.

Memory game

Set a specific time limit, e.g. 30 seconds. Tell pupils to look at the poster carefully and remember as much as they can. Then, cover the poster or take it off the wall and ask pupils one by one about the objects presented in the poster. You may also ask about the features of these objects, e.g. Is the (ball) (big)? What colour is the (kite)? The pupils' task is to answer from memory. You may also conduct this exercise as a team competition, observing the time limit. The team who provided the biggest number of names of objects from the poster wins.

True or false?

Point to various objects in the poster and make true or false sentences related to them. For example, point to a lion and say It's a zebra. Pupils answer No.

Technology

Quiz

Tell pupils that you are thinking about a certain picture from the poster. The pupils' task is to guess which picture you mean. You may describe the object you have in mind for more advanced pupils, e.g. It's grey. It's small. It has got a tail. What is it? Pupils: (It's a bird.)

Peeping through a keyhole

Cut out a hole (5-7 cm wide) resembling a keyhole in the middle of a large sheet of paper. Place the sheet on the poster and ask pupils what they can see. Move the sheet on the poster so that each time pupils guess the name of another object.

Singing

Use a chant related to the subject of the poster and introduced in the Pupil's Book. Ask one or more pupils to come to the poster. Play the chant; the task of pupils standing by the poster is to point to the objects mentioned in the recording.

Placing words on the poster

If pupils can recognise written words, you may ask them to place appropriate word cards below the pictures in the poster. One by one, pupils come to the poster and place a card with the corresponding word in the appropriate place. Then you may ask all pupils to read the words aloud together.

Make your own poster

Pupils can create their own posters, based on a similar topic.

Word card games

Draw the word

Place a set of word cards on the desk. Draw a box on the board. Ask a pupil to pick up the first card and draw the object mentioned in the card in the box on the board. Other pupils guess the word. When they guess the word, the pupil shows the word card to the class.

Games with songs

Sing and respond

Provide a few pupils with one word they have to remember. (The words should come from the song you want to revise.) Play the recording and ask pupils to stand up and sing, and sit down when they hear their word.

Sing and stand in the correct order

Use self-made word cards with objects appearing in the song you want to revise. Ask a few pupils to come to the board. Give them the cards. Explain to pupils that their task is to listen to the lyrics carefully and to stand in the order in which the words from their cards appear. The other pupils sing the song.

Performances

Select a few songs for which you can prepare simple costumes or props. Teach pupils to show the content of the song with gestures or mimics. Invite parents, teachers or pupils from other classes to a miniperformance.

TPR activities

What does the picture present?

Distribute small sheets of paper among pupils and ask them to draw on them one object from the covered material, e.g. food. Collect the papers and stick them to pupils' backs without revealing to them what the pictures present. The aim of the game is to stimulate pupils to ask questions, thanks to which they will be able to guess which picture they have on their backs, e.g. *Is it a (banana)?* Pupils may walk around the classroom or play in pairs.

Alternative bingo

Ask each pupil to draw a picture presenting a word from a certain vocabulary group (e.g. animals). While pupils are drawing, write words belonging to this vocabulary group on small pieces of paper and put them in a box or bag. Ask pupils to stand up. Pick up one piece of paper at a time and read out the word. The pupils who drew the corresponding animal or object should sit down. Continue until you use all the pieces of paper.

Catch and say it!

Ask pupils to stand in a big circle. Say a category of vocabulary (e.g. food) aloud and throw a soft ball to a selected pupil. The pupil has to say a word from the category you chose. If the pupil doesn't catch the ball or say the appropriate word, he/she has to sit down. Continue the game until all pupils sit down.

Pass the ball

Ask pupils to sit in a circle. Choose a category of vocabulary. Give pupils a small soft ball and ask them to pass it from hand to hand. Every pupil who receives the ball has to say a word belonging to the chosen category — if he/she fails to do so, he/she drops out of the game.

The ball is burning

Pupils standing in a circle throw a ball to one another and name words from a vocabulary set. The ball shouldn't be caught when somebody says the 'forbidden' word (previously agreed), e.g. *lemonade* if the vocabulary set is food. If despite that somebody catches the ball, he/she kneels or squats down and continues playing. When he/she catches the ball properly in the next turn, he/she stands up.

Guessing game: pictures

Ask one pupil to slowly draw on the board a picture presenting a new word from the current lesson. Other pupils try to guess what the picture presents and say the appropriate word. The pupil who guesses the word first draws the next picture. A set of ready-made picture charades cards can be found on page 160.

Simon says

Give pupils simple instructions. Warn them, however, that they can follow the instructions only when these are preceded by the phrase Simon says, e.g. when you say Simon says jump, pupils can jump, but when you say only Jump, they cannot move (explain to pupils that Simon is a king who gives them commands). The pupil who makes a mistake loses one point. Vary the speed of instructions to make the game more interesting. Later you may ask pupils to give instructions.

Team games

Picture charades

Divide the class into two teams. Invite one representative of each team to the front of the classroom. Show each of them the same word card or whisper to them the same word. Pupils draw on the board pictures presenting the word. The team which is the first to guess the meaning of the picture and provides the correct word scores one point. A set of ready-made picture charades cards can be found on page 160. (Teacher note: the words on these cards cover all of Semester 1, so you should play this game at the end of the book as a review activity.)

Answer and draw points

Divide the class into two teams. Invite representatives of both teams to the board in turns. Quietly give them particular words and ask them to draw appropriate pictures on the board. If the picture depicts the word correctly, the pupil rolls the dice or spins the spinner and scores the indicated number of points for his/her team.

Parachute

Divide pupils into two teams. On the board, draw a big falling parachute with a parachutist. Think of a word from the current unit and draw as many strokes or lines attached to the parachute, as many letters there are in the word. Pupils from both teams try to guess the word. For each incorrect answer erase one of the lines. Grant points to the teams when they provide a correct answer. When you erase all lines before the word is guessed, the team who answered last loses a point. In order to make the game more dramatic, draw a shark emerging from the sea below the parachutist.

Shadowing

Pupils follow the audio they hear with its written form at the same time as moving their mouths (lips, tongue, etc.) and sub-vocalising. In this way, they are practising moving their mouths to make the right shape at the right speed, but are not making a noise; this is the silent version. This reuses texts to work on pronunciation, but only when overall meaning has been understood. The technique can also be used with vocalisation, where pupils carry out shadowing the intonation and rhythm. I was first made aware of it in the early 1990s but it is having a renaissance as a useful strategy for young learners.

Ghost Writing

Pupils write letters or words in the air with their whole arm.

Backs to the board

Pupils work in two or three teams, with one pupil (the player) from each standing with their back to the board, facing their team members. The teacher writes a word, phrase or drawing which players are NOT allowed to look at. The teams need to find ways to make their player say the target expression/words correctly, and can use any way of doing this, e.g. defining, explaining, miming, giving clues (it's got seven letters, it starts with the letter before B, it sounds like X, etc.). If noise levels get too high, have pupils whisper instead, or pass the talking stick/microphone so only one team member speaks at a time.

Mill drill

The class work in two halves, where one has a question or statement that needs a response. The activity takes place with pupils mingling, walking (with a slip of paper on which they have written down a prompt) around to collect answers/responses, before changing roles.

Concentric circles

Pupils work in two circles to carry out a role play or Q & A or short exchange. The inner circle (standing or sitting) of pupils turn around to face the other pupils in the outer circle, who move around at the teacher's instruction. In this way they rehearse, repeat and practise the TL in a controlled way, with different partners.

Don't say it!

Pupils work in teams or pairs or as a whole class. The aim is to describe a word or phrase without naming it for another pupil or team or the class to name. The ready-made picture and word charades cards on pages 160 and 161 can be used for this game. For a more challenging game, use the *Don't say it!* cards on page 162, which also include words pupils have to avoid when describing the answer. (Teacher note: the words on these cards cover all of Semester 1, so you should play this game at the end of the book as a review activity.)

Charades

Pupils work in groups or as a whole class to mime out target vocabulary words or expressions for their team to identify. A set of ready-made charades cards can be found on page 161. (Teacher note: the words on these cards cover all of Semester 1, so you should play this game at the end of the book as a review activity.)

Picture Pair Dictation

Pupils describe and draw, using any picture from the book, or a drawing they have made (e.g. the furniture in their room). One describes, the other draws. They should work without being able to see the drawing or the picture (e.g. opposite or back to back). Afterwards, they compare and spot the differences. Pupils then change roles. Encourage communication in English with questions to check, e.g. on the right or the left of ...?

Notes	

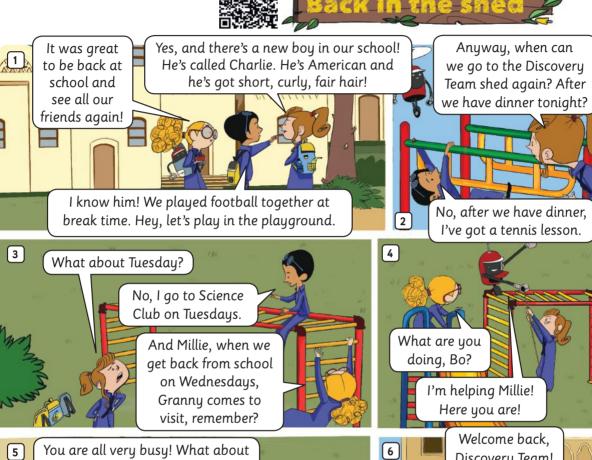
Welcome Welcome back

Free-time activities: play football, play basketball, go swimming, Science Club, visit Granny, tennis lesson

Appearance: curly hair, long hair, straight hair, short hair, dark hair, a beard, fair hair, a moustache









Who is wearing sunglasses?
How many foods can you find?

talking to you, of course! But you're right, Bo! We've all got time now! Let's go!

4 four

Who is wearing sunglasses? Hamed

How many foods can you find? three – an apple, a banana and a packet of crisps

Unit objectives

to describe free-time activities and talk about appearance

Language

Vocabulary	Free-time activities play football, play basketball, go swimming, Science Club, visit Granny, tennis lesson
	Appearance curly hair, long hair, straight hair, short hair, dark hair, a beard, fair hair, a moustache
Grammar	Present simple with when/before/after

Key competences

Linguistic competence: use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1 and 2)

Social and civic competences: learn to be creative (L. 2)

Cultural awareness and expression: raise awareness of cultural similarities and differences in appearance (L. 1 and 2)

Learning to learn: reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–3); use previous knowledge (L. 1–3); follow instructions (L. 3); personalisation of language learnt (L. 2 and 3)

21st Century Skills for Learning and Innovation

Critical thinking	Remembering information (L. 1 and 2); Reflecting on learning (L. 1 and 2)
Creativity	Writing a poem (L. 3)
Communication	Describing weekly planners (L. 1 and 2); Talking about yourself (L. 2)
Collaboration	Acting out (L. 1)

Evaluation

• Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)

	a			•	
1.V		м.		ш	
ш		ш			
			13		

Topics	Theme 1: Society Theme 6: Recreation
Scope and Sequence Matrix	Listening : understanding the main idea and specific details in oral texts describing people, places, and events; taking simple notes while listening; identifying one or more key ideas in an oral presentation or conversation; identifying the topic and setting of oral texts as well as participants and their roles; asking and answering questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something
	Speaking : taking turns in pair or group discussions; following rules for discussions (e.g. speaking one at a time about the topics under discussion)
	Reading : reading and understanding short, simple stories and comic strips involving familiar, concrete situations written in a high-frequency everyday language
	Viewing and presenting : viewing visual information and showing understanding by asking relevant questions
Learning Outcomes and Performance Indicators	Listening : identify the main ideas and specific details in oral descriptions of people, places, and events; respond to questions before, during and after listening; respond to oral presentations, instructions or conversations through questions or statements; extract information from an oral text to do a task; identify the topic of oral texts; identify the setting, participants and plot of a short oral story; use clues to understand new or unfamiliar words when listening (context, illustrations, visual elements)
	Speaking : speak intelligibly while making statements, asking questions, giving instructions and reporting events
	Reading : use various text features (captions, subheadings) to locate key facts or information in a text; skim and scan a text for main ideas and key details; identify the topic, main ideas(s), and key facts in a reading text
	Writing: use correct sentence grammar, punctuation, and capitalisation
	Viewing and presenting: start to demonstrate understanding of visual information by asking relevant questions

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to revise free-time activities vocabulary, to reintroduce the characters with the story
- Target language: play football, play basketball, go swimming, Science Club, visit Granny, tennis lesson
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- a stopwatch
- a ball
- Yes/No response cards

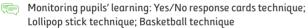
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32). Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by questions (GSE 35).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- **Speaking:** Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30). Can answer simple questions about their daily activities or routines, given a model (GSE 29). Can say what people are doing at the time of speaking, if supported by pictures or gestures (GSE 30).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Write Discovery Team on the board. Ask pupils to tell you the names of the team and say what they know about them.
- · Ask What are your favourite free-time activities?
- Call out these activities one at a time. Ask pupils to respond to which ones they do using their Yes/No response cards: play football, play basketball, go swimming, Science Club, visit Granny, tennis lesson.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will meet the Discovery Team again and revise free-time activities.

Practice

Pupil's Book



- Refer pupils to page 4. Ask pupils to look at the pictures on page 4 and to raise their hands
- to say who and what they can see. · Play the audio.
- · Ask What free-time activities did you hear? (football, tennis lesson, Science Club) Why do you think the story is called 'Back in the shed'? (Because the pupils return to the shed where their club meets now that they are back at school - 'go back' has the same meaning as 'return'.)

- Check comprehension. Ask What's the new boy's name? (Charlie) Who wants to play in the playground? (Hamed) When is Science Club? (on Tuesdays)
- O Pick up the stopwatch and explain that pupils have fifteen seconds to answer the question and find the foods.
- 🥽 Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Read the sentences and write the missing words.

- Rupils work individually and compare ideas in pairs.
- 🥽 Ask pupils to read out their answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

📵 🚣 Act out the story.

- 🎥 Divide pupils into groups of four and allocate a role to each pupil (Katy, Millie, Hamed and Bo).
- · Play the audio again for practice.
- Pupils act out the story in groups. Have a class vote for the best performance.

Diversity

Challenge

· Pupils act out the story to the class without the books.

Support

· Struggling pupils prompt from the book.

🗿 💭 Look at the weekly planner. Ask and answer.

- R Place pupils in pairs. Ask different pupils to read out a day from the planner.
- Ask two pupils to read out the example question and answer. Ask What word do we need in the question? What letter do we add to the verb in the answer? (does s).
- Pairs ask and answer the questions about the planner. Monitor and help when necessary.

5 🦺 💭 Who is it? Describe a person to your partner.

• Rupils work in the same pairs.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Ask pupils what they see using the Basketball technique.

Activity Book

1) Look, read and match.

Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

Answer key 2 a, 3 d, 4 b

2 W2 Listen and complete.

· Play the audio. Pupils write their answers. Then play the audio again for pupils to check.



Girl: Hello. I'm Zeinab. I'm always very busy! Look at my weekly planner. On Sundays, I have an Art lesson. On Mondays, I don't have Art, but I have my Science Club. What about Tuesdays? Well ... on Tuesdays, I have my tennis lesson. I'm very good at tennis! Then it's Wednesday \dots I always go to the library on Wednesdays. I love it! And Thursdays! I love Thursdays because I don't have any clubs and I can visit Granny! Are you very busy,

Answer key Monday: Science Club; Tuesday: tennis lesson; Wednesday: library; Thursday: visit Granny





- Read the sentences and write the missing words.
 - 1 Katy is happy after her first day back at <u>school</u>.
 - 2 There's a new boy in ___Millie__'s school.
 - 3 He's from the USA/America
 - 4 On Tuesdays, Hamed goes to Science Club
 - 5 On Wednesdays, Millie and Katy's granny visits/comes to visit
 - **6** Bo says they are all very **busy**.
- Act out the story.
- Look at the weekly planner. Ask and answer.



🔓 💭 Who is it? Describe a person to your partner.



He has brown hair, and he's having a tennis lesson.

That boy!

Yes!

5

Choose three days of the week. Write what you do.

- · Pupils work individually.
- A Using the Two stars and a wish technique, have pupils read each other's work.
- What are they doing? Write and match.
 - Pupils work individually. Ask different pupils to read out their answers

Answer key 2 Rana and Dalia are playing basketball. (d); 3 I'm drinking a glass of water. (b); 4 Aisha and Salwa are going swimming. (a)

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils draw a planner for the weekend and write two questions and answers for it.

Finishing the lesson

 Susing the Summative questions technique, ask Who is your favourite member of the Discovery Team? Why?

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to use the Present simple with when/before/after
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials •

- a ball
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil (fast finishers)

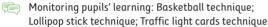
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by guestions (GSE 35). Can understand the correct sequence of events in a simple story or dialogue (GSE 35).
- Listening: Can recognise familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions (e.g. of objects, people or animals), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 24).
- **Speaking:** Can describe their daily routines in a simple way (GSE 30). Can answer simple questions about their daily activities or routines, given a model (GSE 29). Can say what people are doing at the time of speaking, if supported by pictures or gestures (GSE 30).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Write Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday on the board. Tell pupils to think of one activity they do each day. They can make notes.
- Tell pupils to listen carefully to their friends' answers.
- 🗐 Using the Basketball technique, ask What do you do on Mondays/ Tuesdays/Wednesdays? Elicit answers.
- 🗐 Ask pupils if they were listening carefully to their friends. Using the Basketball technique again, ask What does (name) do on Mondays/ Tuesdays/Wednesdays? Elicit answers. Ask (name), is that correct?

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will use the Present simple with when, before and after.

Practice

Pupil's Book

- Look back! Tick (✔) the sentence in this picture.
 - Refer pupils to page 6. Ask different pupils to read out the
 - Pupils refer back to page 4 to check their answer.

Extra activity Critical thinking

· Ask pupils to remember who said the other sentences in Activity 1 (Hamed, Katy).

🔼 🎧 W3 Listen and repeat.

• Present before, when and after. Draw a line on the board and label it like this:



go to school

before when after

- Tell pupils to listen carefully. Say I get up before I have breakfast. When I have breakfast, I watch TV. After I have breakfast, I go to school. Ask What do I do first? (get up) What two things do I do at the same time? (have breakfast and watch TV.) and What do I do last? (go to school) Elicit answers using the Lollipop stick technique.
- Play the audio.

W4 Look and circle the correct word. Listen and check.

- Pupils circle individually.
- Play the audio.
- Check pupils know what to do by using the Traffic light cards technique. Play the audio again if necessary.

Extra activity TPR

- Give four pupils a phrase each (e.g. do homework, read a book, watch TV, have a snack). Assign before, when and after to three different corners of the classroom. Tell pupils they must move to the correct corner for their phrase when you say some sentences, e.g. I watch TV when I study but I have a snack before I start my homework. After I do my homework, I read a book.
- Repeat with other pupils.

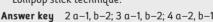
🛂 🧞 💭 In pairs, read, ask and answer.

- · Read the questions and check comprehension.
- Replace pupils in pairs for this activity.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.
- Ask pairs to demonstrate one question and answer each.
- **Extension** Pupils think of one extra question to add to the activity. They then ask and answer their questions in pairs. Monitor pairwork and help where necessary.

Activity Book

1) 🮧 W5 Listen, look and write 1 or 2.

- · Give pupils a moment to look at the pictures. Ask What can you see? and elicit answers.
- 🗐 Play the audio. Ask for answers using the Lollipop stick technique.





- On Saturdays, I have a tennis lesson after I visit 1 Boy: my granny
- 2 Girl: When I get home, I always do my homework.
- 3 Girl: On Thursdays, after I have Science, I play football with mu friends.
- Before I play basketball, I usually watch TV.

Look at Activity 1 and write after, before or when.

Pupils complete the activity and then raise their hands to offer answers.

Answer key 2 When/After, 3 after, 4 Before

Grammar Lesson 2

- Look back! Tick (✓) the sentence in this picture.
 - 1 I go to Science Club on Tuesdays.
 - 2 No, after we have dinner I've got a tennis lesson.
 - 3 What are you doing, Bo?
- 2 😱 Listen and repeat.

I have a shower before I go to school.

When Jameela gets home, she plays with her cat.

After Raed and his family have dinner, they watch TV.

Cook and circle the correct word. Listen and check.



1 Before (Afte) / When I go swimming, I have a shower.



3 Before / After / When we get home from school, we have a sandwich.

2 Before / After / When I do my homework, I watch TV.



4 Dad always makes dinner before / after / when Granny arrives.

- 🙆 🥻 💭 In pairs, read, ask and answer.
 - 1 What do you do before you go to school?
 - 2 What do you do when you get home?
 - 3 What do you do after you have dinner?
 - 4 What do you do when your parents get home from work?



I brush my hair.

Before I go to school,

Diversity

Challenge

 Pupils do Activities 2 and 3 individually. Ask different pupils to write the answers on the board.

Support

• Rupils do Activities 2 and 3 in pairs.

Rewrite the sentences.

- Give pupils a few minutes to complete the activity.
- Ask for answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Answer key 2 goes to the library, reads a book there; 3 watches TV, does her homework; 4 have lunch, go to the park; 5 visit their granny, play games with her

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Are pupils draw two pictures and write a sentence about them like in Activity Book Activities 1 and 2. They can swap with other fast finishers and check each other's work using the Two stars and a wish technique.

Finishing the lesson

- Pupils close their books. Tell them to look at the line on the board from Pupil's Book Activity 2. Ask different pupils to say sentences using the actions above the line.
- Then ask pupils to say their own sentences with their own ideas.
 Encourage them to use their imagination.
- Susing the Summative questions technique, ask Do you understand before, when and after? Can you use them in a sentence?







Vocabulary

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to revise adjectives for appearance
- Target language: curly hair, long hair, straight hair, short hair, dark hair, a beard, fair hair, a moustache
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

- a ball
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand basic sentences describing someone's physical appearance (e.g. eye/hair colour, height), if supported by pictures (GSE 26).
- Listening: Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of their physical appearance and clothes (GSE 27). Can recognise familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions (e.g. of objects, people or animals), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 24).
- Speaking: Can describe someone's physical appearance in a basic way, if guided by questions or prompts (GSE 29).
- Writing: Can write short, simple descriptions of people's physical appearance using basic connectors, when given prompts or a model (GSE 37).

Assessment for Learning

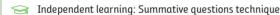


Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Two stars and a wish



Starting the lesson

- · Write Appearance on the board.
- 🕮 Place pupils in pairs. Hand a sheet of A4 paper to each pupil and ask them to write down adjectives that describe their partner's appearance.
- Collect the sheets of paper. Read out the adjectives and ask pupils to raise their hands to say the name of the pupil they think it describes.
- · Ask pupils to confirm the correct person, or correct the answer.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will revise and use adjectives to describe the appearance of people.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🎧 W6 Listen, point and repeat.

- · Before pupils open their books, write hair on the board. Ask pupils to think of words they know to describe hair.
- · Draw a face with a beard and moustache on the board. Ask Do you know what these are? and elicit answers.
- Pupils refer to page 7 and look at the children.
- Play the audio.

Diversity

Challenge

• Pupils speak individually. Call out a number and have pupils say the type of hair on their own.

• Divide pupils into groups. Call out a number and have pupils say the type of hair in groups. Then ask each member of the group to repeat the type of hair on their own.

🗿 🖟 How many other adjectives to describe people do you

- Place pupils in groups of three or four. Give them two minutes to write a list of adjectives.
- \bigcirc Ask pupils for feedback using the Basketball technique.
- · Ask different pupils to write the words on the board.

W7 Listen and read the poem.

- · Play the audio.
- · Check pupils' comprehension with these questions. Ask Why is the family unusual? (They don't look the same./They are different.) What's Manal's brother's name? (Jaber) Is her dad tall or short? (tall) How do we know Manal likes her family being unusual? (She says it's great.)



4 💭 Describe a person from the poem. Your partner guesses.

- · Read the tip to pupils.
- Rlace pupils in pairs to do this activity.

Extra activity TPR

• Describe some appearance characteristics for hair, e.g. short, black hair. When pupils hear a characteristic that matches their appearance, they stand up.

short, fair hair

curly, fair hair

short, straight hair

long, fair hair

long, dark hair

Write a poem about your family.

- · Pupils work individually and write in their notebooks.
- They read each other's poems and check them using the Two stars and a wish technique.

Extra activity Creativity

• Pupils copy their poems onto a blank sheet of A4 paper and draw pictures of their family members.

Activity Book

Look and write.

- Rupils work individually and check in pairs.
- 🥽 Ask for answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Answer key a dark, beard; b curly, long, fair; c short, straight, moustache

W8 Listen and match. Who's got the same hair? Write.

- · Before pupils listen, describe the hair of two teachers and ask pupils to point to the correct person.
- · Play the audio.
- · Pupils compare answers.
- Play the audio again for pupils to confirm answers.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.















curly hair

straight hair

dark hair

fair hair









long hair

short hair

a beard

a moustache

- W How many other adjectives to describe people do you know?
- 🗿 🬇 Listen and read the poem.

My family's unusual. We don't look the same! We all look very different And I think it's great!

I'm Manal, I'm very tall! I've got long, dark, curly hair. This is my brother, his name is Jaber. He's got a moustache and his hair is fair.

This is my dad, he's very tall! He's got a beard, his hair is straight. This is my mum, she's rather short! She's only one metre fifty-eight.

> My family's unusual. We don't look the same! We all look very different And I think it's great!

🙆 🦺 💭 Describe a person from the poem. Your partner quesses.

She's got long, dark, curly hair.

Manal!



When you talk about hair, always say long/short first.

🏌 Write a poem about your family.

seven



Girl: These are my teachers at Grade 5 this year. Mrs Evans has got short, dark, curly hair. She's my PE teacher. Mr White has got short, dark, straight hair. He's got a moustache. He's my Art teacher. This is my headteacher. She's got long, blond, straight hair. Her name is Mrs Wilson. The man with short, blond, curly hair is my English teacher. He's Mr Smith. The woman with long, dark, curly hair is my Science teacher. She's Mrs Brown. Mr Taylor has got short, dark, curly hair. He's got a beard, too. He's my ICT teacher.

Answer key 2 c, 3 a, 4 f, 5 b, 6 e Mrs Evans and Mr Taylor have got the same hair (short, dark and curly).

- ᢃ 🦺 💭 Think of three teachers at your school and write. Then in pairs, read and guess.
 - RR Walk around the class monitoring pairs.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Have pupils write three sentences about the appearance of a friend or family member that is not in the poem.

Finishing the lesson

 \Longrightarrow Using the Summative questions technique, ask $\it Can\ you\ describe$ people's hair and appearance? Was it easy/hard/fun to write a poem?

Mapping

Topics

Theme 1: Society Theme 2: Culture

Theme 6: Recreation

Scope and Sequence Matrix

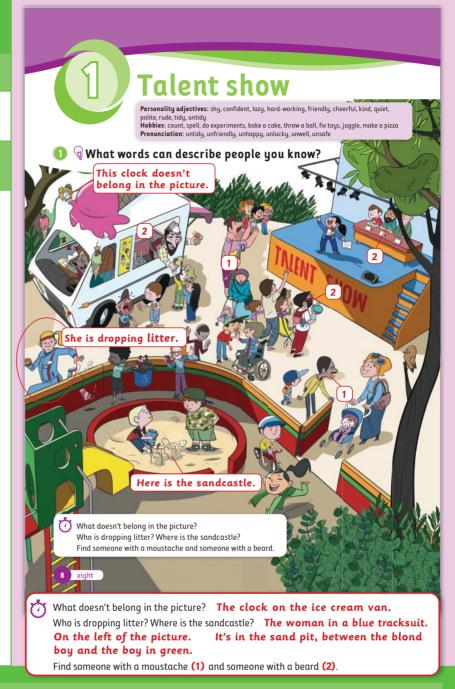
Listening: understanding the main idea and specific details in oral texts describing people, places, and events; taking simple notes while listening; identifying one or more key ideas in an oral presentation or conversation; identifying the topic and setting of oral texts as well as participants and their roles; asking and answering questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something; using nonlanguage-based clues to guess meaning (e.g. qestures, situation, relationships, etc.)

Speaking: taking turns in pair or group discussions; connecting sentences using *or, so, because* and *when*; following rules for discussions (e.g. speaking one at a time about the topics under discussion)

Reading: reading and understanding short, simple stories and comic strips involving familiar, concrete situations written in a high-frequency everyday language; expressing, and justifying, opinions on characters and events

Writing: independently writing short texts (letters, memos, reminders, stories) using adequate spelling, punctuation, grammar, and organisation

Viewing and presenting: viewing visual information and showing understanding by asking relevant questions



Learning Outcomes and Performance Indicators

Listening: identify the main ideas and specific details in oral descriptions of people, places, and events; respond to questions before, during and after listening; respond to oral presentations, instructions or conversations through questions or statements; extract information from an oral text to do a task; identify the topic of oral texts; identify the setting, participants and plot of a short oral story; use clues to understand new or unfamiliar words when listening (context, illustrations, visual elements); ask and answer questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something

Speaking: speak intelligibly while making statements, asking questions, giving instructions and reporting events; identify and use prefixes and suffixes (un-, dis-, ir-, -ful, -ment, -tion) and visual clues to infer the meaning of new vocabulary items

Reading: use various text features (captions, subheadings) to locate key facts or information in a text; skim and scan a text for main ideas and key details; identify the topic, main ideas(s), and key facts in a reading text; explain how specific images or illustrations clarify and contribute to a text

Writing: use correct sentence grammar, punctuation, and capitalisation; write a short, simple descriptive text of a person or place in Jordan

Viewing and presenting: start to demonstrate understanding of visual information by asking relevant questions; interpret visual cues in order to analyse and make inferences about the intention of the message

Unit objectives

to describe personality and talk about hobbies

Language

Vocabulary	Personality adjectives shy, confident, lazy, hard-working, friendly, cheerful, kind, quiet, polite, rude, tidy, untidy Hobbies count, spell, do, experiments, bake a cake, throw a ball, fix toys, juggle, make a pizza
Grammar	Comparative and superlative adjectives be good at
Functions	Describing people She's very (friendly).
Pronunciation	The prefix un- for adjectives: untidy, unfriendly, unhappy, unlucky, unwell, unsafe

Key competences

Linguistic competence: use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–14)

Mathematical, science and technological competences: order to complete a task (L. 3)

Digital competence: use Pupil's Book eBook (L. 1-14)

Social and civic competences: learn to be creative (L. 3); learn to talk about someone in your family (L. 12)

Cultural awareness and expression: raise awareness of cultural similarities and differences (L. 9)

Learning to learn: reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–14); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–14); personalisation of language learnt (L. 5 and 9)

Initiative and entrepreneurship: choose a topic for the project (L. 9)

21st Century Skills for Learning and Innovation

Critical thinking	Predicting (L. 11); Problem solving (L. 3); Logical thinking (L. 1, 3 and 9); Planning (L. 12); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–14)
Creativity	Design a house number (L. 3)
Communication	Describing personalities (L. 1, 5, 7 and 12); Writing and answering questions (L. 5); Comparing (L. 9); Challenge game (L. 13); Functional dialogue (L. 12)
Collaboration	Project groupwork (L. 9); Acting out (L. 3)

Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Pupil's Book p. 18; Activity Book p. 14
- Unit 1 Extra practice: Activity Book pp. 15 and 16
- Unit 1 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, English in action, CLIL
- Unit 1 Test

External exams

Pupil's Book	Activity Book
A1 Movers Listening Part 1	A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2
A1 Movers Speaking Part 1	A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use personality adjectives
- Target language: shy, confident, lazy, hard-working, friendly, cheerful, kind, quiet, polite, rude, tidy, untidy
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- stopwatch
- an empty plastic bottle, a bin
- Resource 1 A

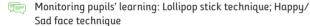
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand short, simple descriptions of objects, people and animals, if supported by pictures (GSE 27).
- Listening: Can recognise familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions (e.g. of objects, people or animals), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 24).
- Speaking: Can describe someone's physical appearance in a basic way, if guided by questions or prompts (GSE 29). Can repeat single words, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 18).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Starting the lesson

- Draw a face on the board. Ask a pupil to draw a beard on the face. Ask another pupil to draw a moustache.
- Ask each pupil in turn to say a word that describes people. They cannot repeat an already mentioned word.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to describe people's personalities

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🗑 What words can describe people you know?

- Refer pupils to page 8. Read the rubric and tell pupils to look at the picture before they speak. Give pupils an example: I can see a girl with long, black hair. Ask pupils to find her.
- 🗐 Using the Lollipop stick technique, ask pupils to describe one person they can see. The other pupils point to the person.
- 👸 🕾 Place pupils in pairs. Pick up the stopwatch and explain that they have one minute to answer the questions together.
- · Check answers as a class.

1.1 Listen, point and repeat.

- Write tidy and untidy on the board. Drop a bottle on the floor and say Look. I'm untidy. Then pick up the bottle and drop it in the bin. Say Now, I'm tidy.
- Refer pupils to page 9. Tell pupils to find tidy and untidy. Tell pupils to look at the photos 1–12 and teach the new vocabulary. Prompt with questions, e.g. What's he/she doing? Is he/she smiling?

- · Plau the audio.
- R Have pupils say a word to their partners for their partner to point to the correct picture. Then they swap.

Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 8. Write the missing word.

• 🗐 🕮 Give pupils one minute to work in pairs to find the personalities and write the missing word. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Draw two columns on the board and label them + and -. Ask a pupil to write one + personality adjective in the + column. Ask another pupil to write the opposite adjective in the - column. Repeat with other pupils.

Extra activity TPR

• 🗐 Using the Happy/Sad face technique, consolidate the + (up) and – (down) adjectives. Call out the adjectives in random order and wait for pupils to react correctly.

Finish the sentences.

- · Pupils write their ideas in the notebooks. Monitor and check their work.
- · Ask different pupils to read out their ideas.

5 🦺 💭 Read your descriptions from Activity 4 to a partner. Can they guess the job?

Place pupils in different pairs for this activity.

Diversity

· Pupils complete Activity 5 without referring to their ideas from Activity 4.

Support

• Pupils refer to their ideas from Activity 4.

Finishing the lesson

Put pupils in groups of four and ask them to describe their classmates.

Lesson 2 **Activity Book**

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use personality adjectives
- Target language: shy, confident, lazy, hard-working, friendly, cheerful, kind, quiet, polite, rude, tidy, untidy
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Speaking

Materials

• sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand short, simple descriptions of objects, people and animals, if supported by pictures (GSE 27).
- Writing: Can write short, simple descriptions of people's physical appearance using basic connectors, when given prompts or a model (GSE 37).
- **Speaking**: Can describe someone's physical appearance in a basic way, if guided by questions or prompts (GSE 29). Can repeat single words, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 18).













shy

confident

lazy

hard-working









friendly

cheerful

kind

quiet









polite

rude

tidy

untidu

- \nearrow Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 8. Write the missing word.
- Finish the sentences.

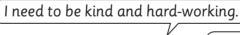
I'm a waiter. In my job, I need to be...

I'm a doctor. In my job, I need to be...

I'm an actor. In my job, I need to be...

I'm a school pupil. At school, I need to be...

📵 🦺 💭 Read your descriptions from Activity 4 to a partner. Can they guess the job?



A doctor?



nine



Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Write some job titles on the board.
- Give a description of what qualities one particular job would need, using personality adjectives from the previous lesson.
- Pupils guess the right job from the description.
- If you have time, pupils can then continue with descriptions and their classmates guess.

Practice

- O Look at Pupil's Book page 8 and complete the
 - & Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. Have pupils check their answers with their partners.

Answer key 1 sandcastle, 2 fair

- Look at the four girls and write the adjectives. Then write their opposites to make pairs.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually.

Answer key 2 polite - rude, 3 hard-working - lazy, 4 tidy untidy



- 3 Dook at Activity 2 and number. Then make sentences for the other words in Activity 2. Play a guessing game with your partner.
 - 🕮 Place pupils in pairs to read and say the number.
 - Pupils work individually to write sentences in their notebooks for the opposite words. Monitor pupils' work.
 - Pupils play a guessing game in pairs. They use the sentences in the Pupil's Book and in their notebooks to guess the personality.

Answer key α 3, b 2, c 4, d 1

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Have pupils make a list of adjectives and their opposites for people's appearance.

Finishing the lesson

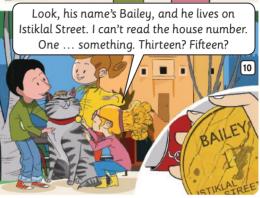
- Pupils close their books and work in groups of three. Give each group a sheet of A4 paper. Tell pupils to draw twelve boxes on the sheet of paper.
- Groups try to remember the twelve new words and write them in the boxes.
- Susing the Summative questions technique, ask How many words did you remember? Which words are harder to remember? Why? Can you spell them correctly? What can you do to remember them?











- Where does Bailey live? Go to page 66 to find out. at 17 Istiklal Street
- CLIL
- After you read What happens first? Read and tick (✓).
 - **1 a** Millie eats a banana.
 - **b** The children start watching the talent show.
- **2 a** The cat runs onto the stage.
 - **b** Bo comes to help Millie.

- 6 Act out the story.
- 6 *Design your own house number and share.

This is my house number. It's got a picture of a rabbit on it.

eleven

- Lesson aims: to listen to a story
- Target language: revision of personality adjectives; jugaling
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- three scrunched up balls of paper
- Resource 5

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32). Can understand the order in which events happen, e.g. in diary entries or a story (GSE 41).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can name everyday objects in their immediate surroundings or in pictures, if guided by questions or prompts (GSE 19). Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30). Can describe common everyday objects using simple language (GSE 31).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Happy/Sad face technique





Independent learning: portfolio

Starting the lesson

Write confident, hard-working, kind, polite and tidy on the board with the first and last letter missing. Ask different pupils to complete the words and say the opposites.

Presentation

• Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to a story.

Practice

Pupil's Book

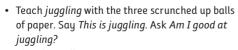
Before you read Which fruit can you see in the story?

• Refer pupils to pages 10 and 11.

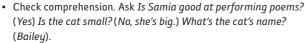
Extra activity Critical thinking

• Ask What do people do in a talent show? Accept all reasonable answers

🔼 🎧 1.2 Listen and read.







Extra activity TPR

• Pupils mime the actions. Say You're having a banana/running/ good at juggling/great at performing poems.

🗿 Where does Bailey live? Go to page 66 to find out.

- Republis discuss in pairs.
- 🗐 Using the Happy/Sad face technique, ask Did you find out where Bailey lives?

△ After you read What happens first? Read and tick (✔).

• Ask different pupils to read out the sentences in the correct

Diversity

Challenge

· Have pupils complete Activity 4 individually.

• Pall pupils to collaborate in pairs to complete Activity 4.

🚺 🎎 Act out the story.

- 👔 Divide pupils into groups of five. Allocate a role to each pupil (Millie, Katy, Hamed, Bo and Bailey).
- Pupils act out the story in groups.

👩 🌟 Design your own house number and share.

- · Give pupils a sheet of A4 paper for their designs.
- Sa Pupils present their work to the class. They keep their work in their portfolios.
- Extension Internet search key words: images for house numbers, house numbers plaques

Finishing the lesson

· Ask pupils what their favourite part of the story was.

Lesson 4 **Activity Book**

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to review a story
- Target language: revision of personality adjectives
- Skills: Reading, Writing

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32). Can understand the order in which events happen, e.g. in diary entries or a story (GSE 41).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique Peer learning: pairwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

How to work with stories

Stage 1 - Before listening to the story

First, talk to pupils about the characters appearing in the story and about the places in which they appear. Ask pupils what they can see in the pictures and invite them to guess what will happen in the story. Remember to praise pupils for all their ideas, but do not correct them and do not explain too much. (In a moment pupils will listen to the recording and check if they were right). Focus more on what occurred in the story than on the language itself. First, pupils will understand the story as a whole, then they will remember the vocabulary used in the story.

Stage 2 - Listening to the story

At this stage remember to encourage pupils to compare their previous ideas with what actually happened in the story. Play the recorded story and ask pupils to point to the appropriate pictures in the Pupil's Book.

Stage 3 - After listening to the story

After listening to the story together, ask pupils a few questions about it to make sure that they understood what happened. When answering, pupils additionally practise and consolidate the previously introduced language material.

Stage 4 - Acting out

After having listened to the story a few times, your pupils should be ready to act it out. Pupils can contribute to the story, first by making particular gestures and then, depending on the difficulty of the text, by using simple phrases. You may also play particular parts of the recording and ask pupils to repeat them each time.

Next, you may divide pupils into groups and ask each of them to say the lines of one character. Under the teacher's supervision and on the basis of the pictures, pupils quote the lines of appropriate characters. To make this exercise more interesting, you can bring items to be used as props.

Suggested exercises

- Ask pupils to draw a scene from the story they have heard.
- Ask pupils to invent another ending for the story they have heard.
- · Pupils draw their favourite character.
- Talk to pupils about what the characters learnt.
- Ask pupils about the way they would behave or feel if they were one of the characters.
- Read some lines from the story. Pupils should provide the name of the character who says the lines.

Starting the lesson

• Ask pupils to tell you what happens in the story from the previous lesson. Replay the audio if you have time.

Practice

1 After you read Read and complete. Then match.

• Sie Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. Pupils check their answers with their partners.

Answer key 1 talent show, 2 cat, 3 better, 4 ball; a 2, c 4, d 3

Read and write True or False.

• Pupils complete the activity individually. **Answer key** 2 False, 3 False, 4 True, 5 False

Correct the false sentences in Activity 2.

• Pupils write and then compare answers with a partner.

Answer key

2 Millie eats a banana before she goes on stage.;

3 Millie looks very confident on stage.; 5 The cat's name is Bailey.

✓ Values Read and tick (✓). How do you help your friends develop their talents?

• Check pupils know what to do using the Traffic light cards technique.

Answer key 4 🗸

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils write extra sentences for the Values activity.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they learnt about food and diet from the story.

CLIL Link

In Unit 1, the story is based around the concept of food and diet from the Science curriculum.

Millie feels dizzy before going on stage for the talent show, and Katy and Hamed tell her that she should eat more often to have enough energy. When Millie goes on stage, a big cat interrupts her show, but this makes her show very funny and everybody thinks she's the best contestant.

To explore the concept of food and diet further, you can use Resource 5.

- Lesson aims: to learn and use comparative and superlative
- Target language: (My mum) is (short)er than (me). (She's) the (short)est (person in our family!); revision of personality adjectives
- Skills: Reading, Speaking, Writing, Listening

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils
- Resource 10 A

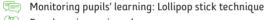
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can identify specific information in a simple story, if quided by questions (GSE 35).
- Speaking: Can make simple, direct comparisons between two people or things using common adjectives, given a model (GSE 38).
- Writing: Can make simple comparisons between people, places or things (GSE 40).
- Listening: Can recognise familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions (e.g. of objects, people or animals), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 24).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork

Starting the lesson

- Write Bailey on the board. Ask What animal is Bailey? Is she big or small? Is she very big? and elicit answers.
- Ask pupils what they remember from the story from Lesson 3. Prompt with questions. Ask Who is good at performing poems? Is Bailey friendly? Does Millie feel OK? What does she eat? What happens to Millie's trick?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to compare.
- Draw a mouse on the board. Then draw a bigger cat next to it. Finally draw a big wolf (the biggest of the three animals). Ask Is the mouse small? Is the wolf small? and elicit answers.
- Write small smaller the smallest on the board. Say these sentences and have pupils repeat as a class: The wolf isn't small. The cat is smaller than the wolf. The mouse is the smallest animal.

Practice

Pupil's Book

\nearrow Look back! Tick (\checkmark) the sentence in this picture.

- Refer pupils to pages 10-12.
- Extension Ask pupils to look at pages 10 and 11. Read out sentences with comparatives and superlatives in them in random order and ask pupils to find them in the story.

2 🎧 1.3 Listen and repeat.

- Play the audio.
- Write short shorter the shortest on the board. Then write kind on the board and ask pupils to think about how to change this adjective. Have two different pupils write kinder and the kindest on the board.
- Tell pupils that long adjectives don't change, but we add words. Ask them to find the extra words we add in the grammar box and elicit more and the most.
- Write <u>hard-working</u> <u>more</u> hard-working <u>the most</u> hardworking on the board. Ask pupils to do the same for confident.
- Draw pupils' attention to the irregular adjectives. Ask How do we change 'good' and 'bad'? What letter changes in 'tidy'? What letter do we add in 'big'? and elicit answers.
- Extension Pupils find the comparative and superlative adjectives in the story on pages 10 and 11. They write the words in their notebook under two separate headings.

Diversity

Challenge

• Do not underline the letters and words in the examples. Pupils look and work out the rules.

· Write the irregular adjectives on the board while you explain, in order to check that all pupils understand.

Read and write the adjectives.

- Give pupils a minute to read the descriptions quietly and think about the answers before writing their answers. Tell them to be careful with 5 because it is a long adjective.
- 🕽 Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils work in pairs. Hand each pair a sheet of A4 paper. Pupils look again at Activity 3 and write five questions about it. Walk around the class monitoring pairs.
- · Ask pairs to ask other pairs their questions.

Extra activity TPR

- Demonstrate stretching your arms wide for long adjectives and closing your palms together for short adjectives. Call out these long and short adjectives in random order. Pupils do the correct movements.
 - short, curly, fair, straight, dark, long, shy, lazy, big, kind, quiet, rude, tidy, confident, hard-working, cheerful, untidy
- Repeat the activity with sentences containing long or short adjectives in the comparative and superlative forms.

Finishing the lesson

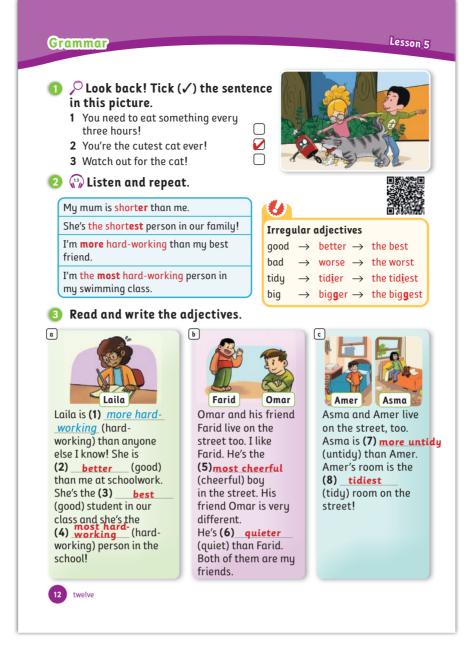
- Describe one or two pupils in the class in a positive way. Other pupils guess who you are talking about.
- Repeat with other pupils making descriptions for their classmates to

Lesson 6 Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use comparative and superlative adjectives
- **Target language**: (My mum) is (short)er than (me). (She's) the (short)est (person in our family!); revision of personality adjectives
- Skills: Reading, Writing





Materials

• sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand short, simple descriptions of objects, people and animals, if supported by pictures (GSE 27). Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of their physical appearance and clothes (GSE 30).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Three facts and a fib technique

Starting the lesson

- Write the four irregular adjectives on the board (good, bad, tidy, big) and ask pupils to give you the comparative and superlative forms.
- Ask pupils then to give you sentences using each word and to write a sentence on the board.

Practice

- O Look, read and choose the correct answer. Then write the names of the children.
 - · Give pupils one minute to complete the activity.

Answer key 2 curlier, 3 the most, 4 better, 5 shier, 6 most confident

Alia, Mariam, Lucy, Fadia

- Complete the sentences.
 - 🕮 🚣 Pupils complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner before class feedback.

Answer key 2 more polite, 3 worse, 4 rudest, 5 most dangerous

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Have pupils study the adjectives in red in the grammar table in the Pupil's Book, then have them cover each adjective one at a time and try to remember it by heart. They can write the adjectives in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

- Place pupils in groups of four. Hand each pupil a sheet of A4 paper. Pupils practise comparative and superlative adjectives using the Three facts and a fib technique.
- · Walk around the class monitoring groups.

Vocabulary and Grammar

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use vocabulary for hobbies; to learn and use be good at; to learn and sing a song
- Target language: count, spell, do experiments, bake a cake, throw a ball, fix toys, juggle, make a pizza; I'm good at (baking cakes).
- Skills: Listening, Speaking

Materials

- 16 word cards with one of the following written on each one: count, fingers, spell, a word, do, experiments, bake, a cake, throw, a ball, fix, toys, juggle, hats, make, a pizza
- · three scrunched up balls of paper
- Resources 1 B, 10 B, 14, 18

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening**: Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18).
- Speaking: Can repeat phrases and short sentences, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 22). Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22). Can express ability or lack of ability in relation to basic everyday actions (GSE 31).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Starting the lesson

• Ask What are your hobbies? What are you good at doing?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will talk about hobbies and what they are good at doing. They will also sing a song.
- Present juggle, count and spell. Juggle two scrunched up balls of paper and ask What's this? Do you remember? Elicit juggling. Ask Am I good at juggling? Can I juggle balls?
- Say I can count my fingers. and count them. Ask How many people are in class? Allow pupils time to count. Ask Are you good at counting numbers?
- Say I can spell cat. C-A-T. Ask Can you spell bird? Can you spell shy?
 Can you spell confident? Have pupils raise their hands to offer the spelling. Ask Are we good at spelling words?

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🎧 1.4 Listen, point and repeat.

- Refer pupils to page 13. Tell them to look at the pictures. Ask Which words did we just talk about? and elicit count, spell and juggle.
- Teach the other words. Tell pupils to look at the pictures, listen and answer. We do experiments in Science class lessons. What number is it?(3) Look at number 4. What are they haking?(a cake)
 - Is the boy in number 5 throwing a hat? (no, a ball) What about number 6? What is he fixing? (a toy) And can you see the pizza? What number is it? (8)
- Play the audio.

Extra activity Collaborative work

 And out one word card each to sixteen different pupils. Pupils have to find the pupil with the word card that makes a phrase. Repeat with different pupils.

1.5 & 1.6 Listen and sing.

- Play the song and tell pupils to listen only this time.
- Read out the song one line at a time for pupils to repeat.
- Play the song again and encourage pupils to join in.
- () 1.6 Play the karaoke version of the song again and encourage pupils to sing.

Extra activity TPR

• Pupils listen to the song and mime what they hear.

3 1.7 Listen and repeat.

- · Play the audio.
- Ask What word do we add after 'good', and 'great'? and elicit at.
- Ask What three letters do we add to the word after 'good at'? and elicit -ing.



Diversity

Challenge

- To monitor pronunciation, ask pupils to repeat individually.

 Support
- 🐔 To build confidence, ask pupils to repeat in groups.

In pairs, ask and answer. What are you great at? What aren't you good at?

- 🕾 Place pupils in pairs for this activity.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.
- · Ask pairs to demonstrate one example.

Pupil A: Activity Book, page 60.

- Pupil B: Activity Book, page 62.
- $\bullet \ \ \bigotimes \ \mathsf{Place}$ pupils in pairs for this activity and monitor.

Finishing the lesson

 Ask pupils to give a short presentation to the class about what they are good at. Encourage the class to be supportive and to clap.

Lesson 8 Activity Book

Objectives

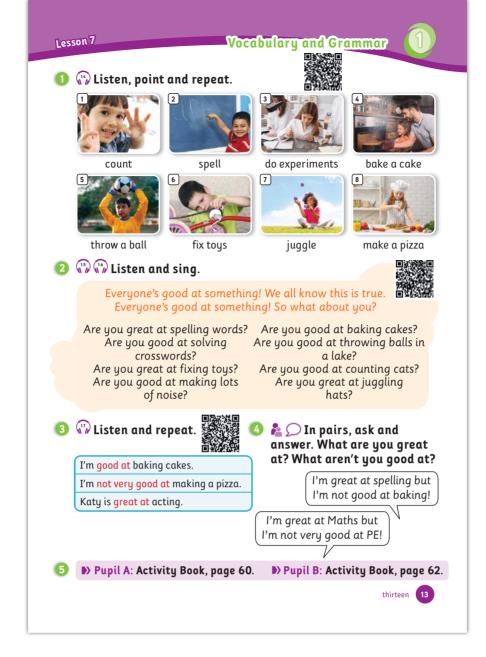
- Lesson aims: to learn and use vocabulary for hobbies; to learn and use be good at
- Target language: count, spell, do experiments, bake a cake, throw a ball, fix toys, juggle, make a pizza; I'm good at (baking cakes); I'm not very good at (juggling).
- Skills: Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

notebooks

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Listening: Can identify basic factual information in short, simple dialogues or stories on familiar everyday topics, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 33).
- Speaking: Can express ability or lack of ability in relation to basic everyday actions (GSE 31).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).



Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Reer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Put pupils into groups. Ask them to find out what group members are good at.
- Ask pupils to tell the class about their groups.

Practice

- Look and match. Then number.
 - · Give pupils one minute to complete the activity.
 - Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Answer key 2 spell a word (g); 3 do experiments (b); 4 bake a cake (e); 5 throw a ball (f); 6 fix toys (h); 7 juggle hats (a); 8 make a pizza (d)

- 2 🞧 1.8 Listen and tick 🗸).
 - · Play the audio



Girl: Hi! I'm Reem, and I love doing a lot of things in my free time. But I'm not good at everything! I love cooking. I think I'm great at making a pizza and, of course, at baking a cake! I love playing with my toys, but I'm not very good at fixing them when they break. I love ball games, but I'm not very good at juggling more than two balls at a time. I think it's very difficult! But I'm good at spelling new words! I think it's fun.

Answer key great at: bake a cake; good at: spell new words; not very good at: fix toys; juggle more than two balls

- 3 Look at the table in Activity 2. Complete the sentences.
 - · Pupils complete the activity individually.

Answer key 1 baking, 2 not very good at fixing, 3 good at spelling, 4 not very good at juggling

- Look at Activity 2 and tick (✔) for you. Use a different colour. Then compare with your partner.
 - 🕾 Place pupils in pairs for this activity.

Extra activity Fast finishers

· Pupils write the collocations in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

• 😭 Using the Summative questions technique, write What have you learnt today? on the board and have pupils answer the question in their notebooks

- Lesson aims: to learn about good manners
- Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

- True/False response cards
- notebooks
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for two for each group of pupils
- coloured pencils, staples or string

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).
- **Listening**: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41). Can describe the differences between the customs of two cultures, using simple language (GSE 50).
- Writing: Can write short, simple texts about topics of personal relevance, given prompts or a model (GSE 38).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Monitoring pupils' learning: True/False response cards technique; Lollipop stick technique

Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Write polite and rude on the board. Ask pupils to offer ideas of what is polite and what is rude in their country.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will talk about good manners around the world.
- Write special word, handshake and food on the board. Explain meanings and ask pupils to predict why these words are in a text about good manners.

Culture notes

- In the UK people also say Yes, please and No, thank you to offers.
- In Japan it is polite to bow when you meet someone.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 Before you read Why is it important to show good manners?

- Rupils discuss in pairs, then ask for feedback. Pupils raise their hands to offer ideas. Encourage class discussion. Ask Who agrees? What do you think (name)? Do you have another idea?
- Refer pupils to page 14. Tell them to look at the pictures. Ask What can you see? What are the people doing?

2 🞧 1.9 Listen and read.

- · Play the audio all the way through.
- · Check comprehension with questions. Ask What's 'please' in the UK? (the special word) Where is a strong/gentle handshake polite? (the USA; Asia) What do you take off in Asia and South America in someone's home? (your shoes) Where do you finish/not finish all your food on your

plate? (India, the UK; China) Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in pairs and choose a different paragraph each. Pupils write one comprehension question of their own about the paragraph and ask their partner to answer it.

After you read Activity Book, page 10.

- Write these words on the board and ask pupils to find them in the text: handshake, get off the bus, mouth wide open, take off your shoes, good manners, put your feet up.
- · Pupils turn to page 10 in their Activity Books and complete the activities

Extra activity TPR

• 🗐 Pupils react to these sentences using their True/False response cards.

It's rude/polite to take off your shoes in someone's home in Asia. It's rude/polite to say thank you to the bus driver in the UK. It's rude/polite to eat noisily in the USA/China.

It's rude/polite to laugh with your mouth wide open in Japan.

What's different from your country? What's the same?

- Pupils discuss in pairs then have class feedback.
- Extension Internet search key words: good manners, how to be

Diversity

Challenge

• Do Activity 4 using the Lollipop stick technique.

• Prompt discussion with questions that need short answers e.g. Is it important to say thank you?

Project

Make a book about good manners.

- Livide pupils into groups of three. Give each group a sheet of A4 paper and coloured pencils.
- · Give groups two minutes to brainstorm ideas.
- Demonstrate how to fold the A4 paper in half to make a book with four pages and fasten it with staples or string. Explain that pupils must design a cover page and then write about three different manners on the three pages in the book.
- Each group presents their book, reading a page each.

Activity Book

- 🚺 Read, look and number.
 - Pupils work individually to complete this activity. Answer key 2 c, 3 f, 4 d, 5 b, 6 e
- After you read Read and answer the questions.

Answer key 2 Thank you.; 3 in the US; 4 in Asia and South America; 5 in Asia and South America





There are many different ways to be polite or rude around the world! Let's look at what good manners are in different countries.



Saying 'please' and 'thank you'

All around the world, it's important to say 'please' and 'thank you'. In the UK, if a child asks 'Can I have some water?', a British parent often asks 'What's the special word?'. The child then remembers to say 'please'!

And do you know that in the UK most people say 'thank you' to the bus driver when they get off the bus?

Meeting new people

In the US, it's polite for adults to give a strong handshake when they meet someone. In Asia, the opposite is true: it's better to give a gentle handshake!



handshake

In Asia and South America, it's polite to take off your shoes when you go into a home. But be careful when you sit down. It's very rude to put your feet up and show the bottom of your feet!



Good manners with food

In India and the UK, it's polite to finish everything on your plate. In China, it's very rude to do that! If you finish everything, it means you didn't get enough food.

In the US and the UK, it's polite to eat quietly. In China, it's better to eat noisily. This shows that you are enjoying your food.



Did you know that in Japan it's rude to laugh with your mouth wide open?

- 1 Before you read Why is it important to show good manners?
- 2 😘 Listen and read.
- 3 After you read
 - >> Activity Book, page 10.
- What's different from your country? What's the same?

In Argentina, it's polite to eat quietly, too.

14 f

fourteen

3 🏽 Write one bad manner for each place.

Project

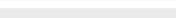
Make a book about good manners.

- 1 In groups, brainstorm good and bad manners in your country.
- 2 Choose three things to write about.
- 3 Now make your book.
- 4 Show your book to the class.





In my country, you must ... You should ... It's polite to ...



Possible answers 1 eat noisily / don't say 'thank you' to the bus driver; 2 give a gentle handshake when meeting somebody / eat noisily; 3 finish everything on your plate / eat quietly; 4 don't take off your shoes when you go into a home / sit with the bottom of your feet showing

- Make a poster about good and bad manners at school.

 Then make a class display.
 - Place pupils in small groups to help each other with their posters.
 - Walk around the class monitoring groups.
 - Display the posters on the wall.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils write ten important words from the text in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Summative questions technique, write What was the most interesting thing in the lesson for you? Why? on the board and have pupils answer the questions in their notebooks.

- Lesson aims: to learn to describe people; to learn and practise the prefix un- for adjectives
- Target language: What's she like? She's really friendly.
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- Yes/No response cards
- a hall
- Resource 22

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand short, simple descriptions of objects, people and animals, if supported by pictures (GSE 27).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of their physical appearance and clothes (GSE 27). Can identify specific information about people's personalities in short, simple dialogues, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can say what people are doing at the time of speaking, if supported by pictures or gestures (GSE 30). Can describe someone's personality in a basic way, if guided by prompts (GSE 39). Can say simple tongue twisters and other types of playful language (GSE 27).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Yes/No response cards technique; Basketball technique



Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique

Starting the lesson

Ask pupils questions for them to respond with their Yes/No response cards. Ask Have you got long/straight/short/fair/dark hair? Are you tall/short? Are you friendly/shy/confident/rude/polite?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to describe people.
- Ask two pupils to come to the front. Tell the class to listen carefully. Ask Are you good at a sport or a hobby? What are you good at? Are you noisy/quiet/shy/confident?
- $\bullet \hspace{0.1cm}$ Using the Basketball technique, ask the class questions about the two pupils who stood up: What's (name) good at? What's he/she like, noisy or quiet? etc.

Diversity

Challenge

• Use confident pupils for the presentation.

• Write the answers on the board under the pupils' names so pupils can answer more easily with the Basketball technique.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🗑 Look at the picture. What game are they playing?

- Refer pupils to page 15. Pupils discuss in pairs and then raise their hands to offer answers.
- Extension Internet search key words: football

2 🎧 1.10 Listen. Can you find Jameela in the picture?

· Play the audio. Pupils raise their hands to offer answers. Do not confirm answers yet.



1.11 Listen, read and check.

- Play the audio again for pupils to listen and read. Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the Say it! box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class.



Extra activity TPR

• Read out the questions and answers in the Say it! box in random order. Assign questions to half the class and sentences to the other half of the class. Pupils all stand up. They sit down accordingly when they hear a question or an answer.

🛂 🦺 💭 In pairs, describe someone in the picture or someone in your school.

- 👺 Place pupils in pairs and assign Pupil A and Pupil B. Pupil A describes and Pupil B guesses. Then pupils swap roles.
- Extension Divide pupils into two teams. Repeat the activity with two pupils from each team. Pupils score a point for quessing correctly. Repeat until all pupils have had a turn.

Extra activity Creativity

 Pupils remain in the same pairs as in Activity 4. Pupil A describes someone's hair, face and height. Pupil B tries to draw the person. They then swap roles: Pupil B describes someone and Pupil A draws.

Pronunciation

5 \(\int \) 1.12 Listen and say the tongue twister.



- · Write the following sentences on the board: He/She is happy. He/She is unhappy.
- Underline the /nn/ in the word. Explain that this is a prefix that we use to make the word negative.
- Play the audio. Play it again, pausing after each line, and have pupils repeat. Play it a third time and have pupils say the tonque twister with the audio.
- In pairs, pupils say the tongue twister as fast as they can.
- Invite a few pupils to the front to say the tongue twister.

Activity Book



Answer keu

Muna: (look like) short hair, curly hair; (like) confident; (good at) juggling

Zeina: (look like) long hair, dark hair, straight hair; (like) untidy; (good at) fixing toys

2 1.13 Order the sentences to make a dialogue. Listen and check.

· Pupils complete the activity, then they listen and check

Answer key 1, 5, 2, 6, 4, 7, 3



English in action Describing people

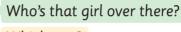
- Ucok at the picture. What game are they playing?
 - Listen. Can you find Jameela in the picture?
- This is Jameela. Listen, read and check.











Which one?

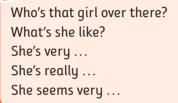
The one with straight, brown hair.

Oh, that's Jameela. She's in my class. She's new.

What's she like?

She's very friendly. She seems very confident. She's really good at football. She's on the school team already! Come and meet her!





🔼 🧘 💭 In pairs, describe someone in the picture or someone in your school.

Pronunciation_

5 😘 Listen and say the tongue twister.

My sister is untidy. Her bedroom is a mess! She says that I'm unfriendly When I don't help her find her dress.





fifteen



- 🗿 🦺 💭 Now practise the dialogue in Activity 2 in pairs. Use your own ideas for the underlined words.
 - & Walk around the room monitoring pairs.
- 4) 🎧 1.14 Change these words to make them negative. Listen and check. Then say a sentence for each form of the word.

1 unhappy, 2 untidy, 3 unfriendly, 4 unlucky, 5 unwell, 6 unsafe



Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils write a description of a friend in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

◯ Using the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask *How* successful is your learning? What are you doing to learn? How do you think you can improve? and encourage class discussion.

- Lesson aims: to read and understand a reading text
- Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Writing

Materials

Resource 26

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- · Reading: Can identify the key characteristics and structure of a limited range of factual text types (e.g. articles, instructions) (GSE 47). Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions

Starting the lesson

• Ask pupils what crime stories they read or crime series on TV they watch. Encourage class discussion with questions, e.g. Are crime stories exciting? Do people take things in the stories? What do they take? Do the police catch them?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will read a crime report.
- Tell pupils to work in pairs. Give them one minute to write down the personality adjectives they remember from Lesson 1.
- 🚍 Ask for feedback using the Basketball technique.
- Pre-teach diamond and magnet. Write them on the board, draw simple pictures and ask Which one is a beautiful stone? Which one can you use to do experiments? Elicit answers.
- Pre-teach ill, glass box, circus and trapeze. Write the words on the board. Say sentences to explain the meanings. Say When you are ill, you see a doctor. A glass box can break. It's glass like a window. A clown works at a circus. Some people fly on a trapeze at a circus.

Practice

Pupil's Book

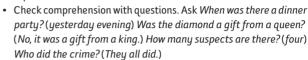
Before you read What kind of text is it?

• Refer pupils to page 16. Tell them to look at the text quickly to find out what kind of text it is. Ask them to point to the place they find the answer (Chief Inspector Fleming's report). Explain the meaning of report if necessary. Ask What does a police report tell us? and elicit answers. Accept all reasonable suggestions.

• Extension (?) Pupils work in pairs and think about what they would see in a fact file, a magazine article and a blog. Ask for class feedback and accept all reasonable suggestions, e.g. fact file: true information; magazine article: information and an opinion; blog: an opinion.

2 🎧 1.15 Listen and read.

- Ask pupils to count how many people are in the report while they listen and read. Play the audio.
- Ask pupils to say how many people are in the report.



Ask What is Miss Allen/Mr Waters/Mrs Sillitoe/Mr Allen like? Pupils raise their hands to offer answers.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in groups of three or four. They think of a different solution to the crime and tell the class. Have a class vote for the best alternative suggestion.

After you read Correct the sentences.

- Give pupils a minute to read the text again. Then pupils read the sentences. They cross out the incorrect information and write the correct information above it.
- $\begin{tabular}{l} \blacksquare \end{tabular}$ Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Diversity

Challenge

• Tell pupils to find the parts of the text where they find the information they need to correct the sentences.

• Pupils work individually on one sentence at a time. Write the correct sentences on the board so pupils can check their answers.

Extra activity TPR

- Practise the words diamond, magnet, ill, glass box, circus and trapeze. Write them on the board in different corners and at the top and bottom.
- Read different sentences with the words from the text. Pupils point to the part of the board with the word.

Activity Book

🚺 After you read Look and write.

· Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. Answer key 2 trapeze, 3 circus, 4 glass box, 5 diamond, 6 ill

Circle the correct answer.

• Rupils complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner before class feedback.

Answer key 2 glass, 3 grandfather, 4 older, 5 magnets, 6 circus

How did they get the diamond? Read and put the underlined words in the correct place. Rewrite the

• Pupils complete the activity individually. They can refer to their Pupil's Books if necessary.

Answer key Mrs Sillitoe watched the door. Miss Allen used Mr Allen's magnet to get the glass box. Mr Waters went to London with the diamond.

Skills Lesson 11

Reading

Before you read What kind of text is it?

a fact file a magazine article a report a blog

2 (15) Listen and read.





Chief Inspector Fleming's report

Yesterday evening, there was a dinner party at Mrs Sillitoe's house. The famous Sillitoe Diamond was in a glass box. The diamond was a present from the King to Mrs Sillitoe's grandfather. This morning, the box and the diamond weren't there.

These people were at the dinner party:

- Mrs Frederica Sillitoe, 47, doctor, hard-working.
- Mr Paul Waters, 43, vet, kind and quiet.
- Miss Marina Allen, 25, actress, confident.
- Mr John Allen, 19, Science student, very shy. Marina Allen's brother.

More information about the suspects:

- Miss Allen is an actress, but she's working as a trapeze artist in a circus, not in a theatre.
- Mr Waters hasn't got any money. His wife is ill, and he needs to pay for an expensive operation.
- Mrs Sillitoe needs money, too. Her husband lost all the family's money last year.
- Mr Allen's teacher says he is the most hard-working student in his class. Mr Allen does experiments with a new type of magnet.

Conclusion: They all did it together.

Mrs Sillitoe watched the door.

Miss Allen used Mr Allen's special
magnet to get the glass box. Mr
Waters went to London with the
diamond.

3 After you read Correct the sentences.

- 1 Chief Inspector Fleming was at the dinner party.
- 2 Miss Allen is a vet and Mr Waters is a chef.
- 3 Mr Allen is an Art student.
- 4 Mrs Sillitoe has got a lot of money.
- 5 Mrs Sillitoe used Mr Allen's special magnet to take the diamond.



Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils write the correct sentences for Pupil's Book Activity 3 in their notebooks in full.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask Are you good at understanding what kind of text you are reading? Is it possible to understand a text without knowing all the words? Do you feel confident about reading activities? How can you get better? and encourage class discussion.

- Lesson aims: to understand a listening task; to describe someone; to write a description of someone
- Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

- a ball
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- Resource 30

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 41).
- Listening: Can identify specific information in short, simple dialogues, if there is some repetition and rephrasing (GSE 34).
- **Speaking**: Can describe someone's personality in a basic way, if guided by prompts (GSE 39).
- Writing: Can write a short description of a person they know well (GSE 40).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Basketball technique Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique



Starting the lesson

• 1.5 Play the song from Lesson 7 and encourage pupils to join in.



Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to a description of people, describe someone and then write a description of someone they know.
- Write I'm great/good at -ing on the board. Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils to say one thing they are good at doing. Tell pupils to listen carefully to each other.
- Erase I'm and write He's/She's in its place. Ask pupils to say what their partner is good at doing.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Listening



- · Refer pupils to page 17 and look at the people in Activity 1. Ask Which person has a beard/moustache/fair hair/long dark hair/is tall/is short? for pupils to call out the number.
- · Play the audio.
- 🏖 Pupils compare answers with a partner.



- Woman 1: So, Mrs Smith. Tell me what happened.
- Woman 2: Two people stole my bag. I was in the street. I dropped mu baa.
- Woman 1: Were they men or women?
- Woman 2: There was a man and a woman. At first they seemed kind and friendly. They helped me pick up my bag. But then they took my bag and ran away. They were both good at running. They could run very fast.
- What did the man look like? Woman 1:
- Woman 2: The man had fair hair.
- Woman 1: Was his hair curly or straight?
- Woman 2: It was curly.
- Woman 1: And was he tall or short? Woman 2: He was tall, I think.
- Woman 1: What about the woman?
- Woman 2: She was tall, too, I think. They both seemed very tall!
- Woman 1: What did she look like?
- Woman 2: She had long, curly, fair hair. They looked like each other. Maybe they were brother and sister.
- That sounds like Mitch and Penny Lang. They are brother and sister. They seem kind and friendly, but they're really unfriendly. They're very good at stealing bags. They stole a lot last year. But this time, I think we

can catch them!

Diversity

Challenge

· Ask pupils to say why the other people are not the thieves.

Support

• Before listening, write the number of each person on the board and the adjectives that describe that person underneath.

Speaking

Talk about someone in your family.

- & Pupils work in pairs.
- · When they have described someone in their family, ask one pupil in each pair to stand up and talk to another pupil from another pair. Pupils then repeat the activity.

Writing

Read. What doesn't Laith's granny like?

- Give pupils a minute to read the text and find the answers.
- Check comprehension with questions. Ask How old is Granny? (72) Can you describe her appearance? (She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes.) What's she like? (She's kind and hard-working.)

Extra activity TPR

• Pupils mime the activities you read out if you say you like them. If you say you don't like them, they stay still, e.g. I like/don't like ... (reading/watching TV/cooking).

Write about someone important in your life.

- · Read the Writing tip to pupils. Tell pupils to find the linking words in Laith's description in Activity 3.
- · Read the plan to the pupils. Pupils turn to their Activity Books.

Extra activity Creativity

• SAfter checking their written work, pupils copy it onto a sheet of A4 paper and draw a picture of the person. They display their work on the classroom wall and later add it to their



Listening

Listen. Who are the thieves?

and 6 are the thieves



Speaking

Talk about someone in your family.

Uncle Rakan is my favourite uncle. He's very kind ...





Writing

Read. What doesn't She doesn't like watching Laith's granny like? cooking shows on TV.

My Granny

by Laith from Jordan

My granny is my favourite relative. Her name is Nawal. She's 72 years old. She's got short, grey hair and brown eyes.

My granny is very kind and hardworking. She likes reading and she loves watching TV. She likes cooking, too, but she doesn't like watching cooking shows on TV! She always makes me delicious Mansaf because she's great at making Mansaf.

She loves Jordanian history films. I like talking about Jordanian films with my granny.

Write about someone important in your life.

1 Plan

- Who are you writing about?
- What does he/she look like?
- What is he/she like?
- What does he/she like doing?

Write 4

• Write your description.

ᢃ Check your work 🗸

• Linking words?

Writing

Use these words to link ideas: and, or, but, so, because. Look back at Activity 3. Which linking words can you find?

Activity Book, page 13.

seventeen



Activity Book

- Complete the sentences with and, or, but, so or because. Answer key 1 but; 2 but, so; 3 or; 4 and, so; 5 because
- Write about someone important in your life.
 - Plan: Give pupils one minute to complete their notes.
 - Write: Pupils work individually to write their descriptions.
 - Check your work: Write the following questions on the board: Did you use linking words? Did you use a capital letter at the start of each sentence? Did you use a full stop at the end of each sentence? Did you use the correct spellings? Was your writing clear? Pupils evaluate their own work by answering the questions.
 - Solution Using the Two stars and a wish technique, pupils read and check each other's work.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils find the adjectives and the hobbies in Laith's description. They write the words in their notebooks under two separate headings.

Finishing the lesson

Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary: Today I listened to ..., I described ... and I wrote a description of

- Lesson aims: to review unit language
- Target language: unit vocabulary
- Skills: Speaking, Writing

Materials

- 16 word cards from Lesson 7
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Speaking: Can make simple, direct comparisons between two people or things using common adjectives, given a model (GSE 38). Can ask a range of questions in quessing games to find the answer (GSE 36).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20). Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32)

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Ask pupils a key question about reviews, e.g. Why is it important to revise vocabulary? Accept all reasonable answers.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will do revision of the unit vocabulary and then play a game.
- Revise the personality adjectives by writing them on the board with the vowels missing. Ask different pupils to complete the words. confident, friendly, hard-working, kind, lazy, cheerful, polite, rude, shy, tidy, quiet, untidy
- Revise the hobbies by writing the nouns on the board. Ask different pupils to write the missing verbs.
 - (bake) a cake, (count) fingers, (do) experiments, (fix) toys, (juggle) hats, (make) a pizza, (spell) a word, (throw) a ball
- Revise comparatives and superlatives. Write tall taller the tallest on the board. Ask pupils to work in pairs and tell each other the comparatives and superlatives of:

big, tidy, confident, good, bad

· Ask different pupils to write the answers on the board.

Extra activity TPR

· Place the word cards around the room. Call out a word and choose a pupil to find it. When different pupils have found all the words, ask them to find their partner to make phrases.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Write the word. There is one word you don't need.

- Refer pupils to page 18. Pupils write the missing words, comparing their answers in groups of three.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique, pupils read out the complete sentences.

Diversitu

Challenge

• After doing the activity, tell pupils to cover the word box and then repeat the activity in pairs.

• Pupils copy the completed sentences into their notebooks and underline the words from the box.

2) 🧸 💭 In pairs, say the sentences. Then match them to the pictures.

- Pupils work in the same pairs and complete the activity.
- Theck answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• See Give each pair a sheet of A4 paper. Pupils work in pairs and choose three unit words not included in Activities 1 or 2. Pupils write sentences for each word, leaving blank spaces where the words would appear. They then make a box with the missing words in it. Pupils swap sentences with another pair and complete each other's sentences.

Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

- Divide the class into two teams. For large classes, divide the class into groups of eight and divide each group into two teams of four.
- · Give pupils two minutes to think of three extra questions.
- Monitor the game and award points.

Activity Book

- 🚺 Make your own avatar to help you learn English. Then write, circle, draw and share.
 - R Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

Look at Activity 1 and describe your avatar.

- Rupils work individually and check in pairs.
- Ask different pupils to read out their descriptions to the class. Ask How are your avatars the same/different?

Self-evaluation

· Pupils do the activity individually.

Extra practice

- What are they like? Complete the crossword.
 - Rupils can work in pairs to complete the crossword. Answer key 2 tidy, 3 rude, 4 lazy, 5 shy
- Write the correct form of the words in brackets.
 - · Pupils complete the activity individually.

Answer key 2 most untidy; 3 best, worst; 4 bigger; 5 most confident

Write the word. There is one word you don't need. don't need kind

kind count spell throws doing experiments

- 1 Science is great! I love doing experiments
- **2** Jamal is in the garden every afternoon. He a ball throws against the wall and plays with his cat.
- **3** I need to see how much money I've qot. I need to _____ my money.
- 4 How do you <u>spell</u> your name?
- 🔼 🧎 💭 In pairs, say the sentences. Then match them to the pictures.









- 1 Laith is ... than Adnan. He always says 'thank you'. (polite)
- 2 My friend is ... than I am! She always puts away her clothes, but I don't! (tidy) good at
- 3 My toy is broken! But I'm ... fixing toys! (good at)
- 4 That boy is the ... boy in the school! (kind)

Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.

- 1 Find a sandcastle. (1 point) on page 8 (Lesson 1)
- 2 What is Millie good at? (1 point) juggling (Lesson 3)
- 3 Who stole the Sillitoe Diamond? (1 point) Mrs Sillitoe, Miss Allen, Mr Allen and Mr Waters (Lesson 11)

Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.

eighteen

3 Look and write the sentences.

· Pupils work individually.

Answer key 2 Kareem is good at playing tennis.; 3 Amani is great at juggling.; 4 We are good at making a pizza.; 5 You aren't very good at fixing toys.

Vocabulary and Grammar reference

- 1 Translate the words into your language in your notebook. Add more words to the list.
 - Pupils can work in pairs to translate the words.
- Read and complete.
 - Rupils work individually and check in pairs.

Answer key 2 more, 3 the, 4 confident, 5 better, 6 worst, 7 She, 8 are, 9 making

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils think of more questions for the Challenge game.

Finishing the lesson

Something Write on the board In Unit 1 I can ..., I am good at ..., I am not very good at Pupils copy the sentences into their notebooks and complete them with their own evaluation. Using the Summative questions technique, ask different pupils What do you need to practise more? How can you do that? What are you already doing?

Next lesson Unit 1 Test

- Lesson aims: to practise for A1 Movers Listening Part 1, Speaking Parts 1 and 4, and Reading and Writing Part 2
- Target language: unit vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow a simple dialogue about familiar, everyday activities (GSE 31).
- Listening: Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of where they are and what they are doing (GSE 30).
- **Speaking:** Can describe someone's physical appearance in a basic way, if guided by questions or prompts (GSE 29). Can describe basic differences between two pictures showing familiar activities, using simple language (GSE 39).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Expert envoy technique

Independentlearning: Thought-provoking questions technique; portfolio

Starting the lesson

1.6 Play the karaoke version of the song from Lesson 7 and encourage pupils to sing.



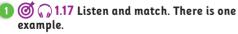
Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will revise the work from the unit and practise for the A1 Movers exams.

Practice

Pupil's Book

A1 Movers Listening Part 1





- This activity is based on the A1 Movers Listening Part 1 exam.
- Tell pupils that this is a practice test and they shouldn't be nervous about completing it.
- 🕮 In pairs, pupils discuss the physical appearance of the people in the picture and what they are doing.
- Play the audio. Pupils listen and draw lines to the correct person. Play the audio again if necessary.
- Theck answers using the Lollipop stick technique. Then explain any mistakes pupils have made.

Girl 1: Hi, Lucy! Over here!

Girl 2: Hi, Daisy! Thanks for inviting me!

Girl 1: It's great you're here! Come and meet my family! Girl 2: Wow, there are a lot of people here! Who are they all? Girl 1: Well, can you see that boy over there? He's playing

football.

Girl 2: The boy with the fair hair? Girl 1: No, the boy with the dark hair.

Girl 2: Oh, yes.

Girl 1: That's my brother, Jim.

Girl 2: OK. He's good at football, isn't he! Who's he playing

Girl 1: The boy with the fair hair? That's my cousin, Fred.

Girl 2: He's not very good at football! Girl 1: Yes, he is! But he doesn't care!

Girl 2: Who is the girl over there? Girl 1: The girl sitting under the tree?

Girl 2:

Girl 1: That's my sister, Lily. She's always really untidy!

Girl 2: And who's the other girl?

Girl 1: The one juggling? That's Clare, my friend.

Man: Hello, Lucy! I'm Jack. I'm Daisy's dad.

Girl 2: Hello!

Would you like some lemonade, Lucy? Man:

Girl 2: Yes, please!

Man: Here you are. And have a piece of cake, too. I baked the

Thank you! (to Daisy) Your dad is very kind and friendly!

Diversity

Challenge

• & Pupils work in pairs. They take turns to say a name for their partner to spell. Then pupils swap roles.

Support

• Pupils look at the names in the Tip box. Read them out and have pupils repeat to practise pronunciation.

A1 Movers Speaking Part 1

🙎 🧭 Find the differences between the two pictures. Say what they are.

- This activity is based on the Speaking Part 1 exam.
- Put pupils in pairs. Pupils look at the two pictures and find the

Answer key In picture A, Max has a yellow T-shirt. In picture B, he has a red T-shirt. In picture A, the room is tidy. In picture B, the room is untidy. In picture A, Max has a football trophy/prize. In picture B, he has a basketball trophy/prize. In picture A, Max has got a pet fish. In picture B, Max has got a pet lizard. In picture A, Max's bed is made. In picture B, his bed is unmade/messy/untidy. In picture A, Max has got a book. In picture B, he's got a computer and/or headphones. In picture A, the wardrobe/closet is closed. In picture B, the wardrobe/closet in open. In picture A, Max is reading. . In picture B, he's listening (to music). In picture A, the books are up. In picture B, they are down.

Activity Book

A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2

1 Do! 0 Read the text and choose the best answer.

- · Tell pupils that this is practice for the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2 exam.
- Pupils do the activity individually. Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

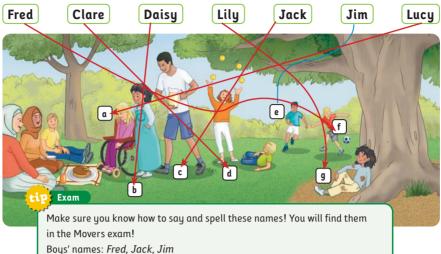
Answer key 2 C, 3 A, 4 B, 5 A



A1 Movers Listening Part 1

1 @ 🖏 Listen and match. There is one example.





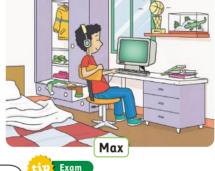
В

A1 Movers Speaking Part 1

② Find the differences between the two pictures. Say what they are.



Girls' names: Clare, Daisy, Lily, Lucy



In picture A, Max has a yellow T-shirt. In picture B, he has a red T-shirt. Look carefully at the pictures before
you answer. There are nine differences.

nineteen



A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

- - Read the questions aloud for the class. Ask What is the first question asking about? (appearance) And the second? (personality) And the third? (ability)
 - Pupils work in pairs and take turns to answer the questions.

Extra activity Fast finishers

- Give each pupils a sheet of A4 paper. Pupils write sentences about one of their friends. Write prompts on the board if necessary, e.g. My friend's got He's/She's He's/She's good at
- Suggest pupils keep their work in their portfolios.

Extra activity Collaborative work

En Divide the class into groups. Ask them to discuss what they
liked about the unit using the Expert envoy technique. Pupils
write their opinion about the unit under the lesson headings. The
envoy reports back to the class.

Finishing the lesson

- Using the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask
 How did you get on in Unit 1? Which lesson did you like best? Which
 words were the easiest and most difficult to remember?
- Congratulate pupils on completing the unit.

Mapping

Topics

Theme 1: Society Theme 2: Culture Theme 3: Science and technology

Theme 6: Recreation

Scope and Sequence Matrix

Listening: understanding the main idea and specific details in oral texts describing people, places, and events; taking simple notes while listening; identifying one or more key ideas in an oral presentation or conversation; identifying the topic and setting of oral texts as well as participants and their roles; asking and answering questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something

Speaking: following rules for discussions (e.g. speaking one at a time about the topics under discussion)

Reading: skimming and scanning a text for main ideas and key details, graphing them; distinguishing facts from opinions; reading and understanding short, simple stories and comic strips involving familiar, concrete situations written in a high-frequency everyday language

Writing: independently writing short texts (letters, memos, reminders, stories); using adequate spelling, punctuation, grammar, and organisation; using simple and compound sentences in journaling writing

Viewing and presenting: viewing visual information and showing understanding by asking relevant questions; responding to a variety of oral presentations; interpreting visual cues to analyse and make inferences about the intended message



Learning Outcomes and Performance Indicators

Listening: identify the main ideas and specific details in oral descriptions of people, places, and events; respond to questions before, during and after listening; respond to oral presentations, instructions or conversations through questions or statements; extract information from an oral text to do a task; identify the topic of oral texts; identify the setting, participants and plot of a short oral story; use clues to understand new or unfamiliar words when listening (context, illustrations, visual elements); ask and answer questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something; listen to others with care and show engagement

Speaking: practise English rhythm; speak intelligibly while making statements, asking questions, giving instructions and reporting events; identify and use prefixes and suffixes (un-, dis-, ir-, -ful, -ment, -tion) and visual clues to infer the meaning of new vocabulary items

Reading: use various text features (captions, subheadings) to locate key facts or information in a text; skim and scan a text for main ideas and key details; identify the topic, main ideas(s), and key facts in a reading text; explain how specific images or illustrations clarify and contribute to a text; identify the setting, participants, and plot of a short story; express opinions on characters, and events, justifying them with information in a text

Writing: use correct sentence grammar, punctuation, and capitalisation; write texts using a range of sentence connectives; use simple and compound sentences to produce a variety of text types (letters, email, memos, reminders)

Viewing and presenting: start to demonstrate understanding of visual information by asking relevant questions; interpret visual cues in order to analyse and make inferences about the intention of the message; listen to other learners' responses, realising that people react differently

Unit objectives

to talk about technology and use verbs

Language

Vocabulary	Technology computer, email, smartwatch, keyboard, letter, carry, mouse, telephone, call, tablet, mobile phone, study Verbs post a letter, hold a pen, send an email, win a race, make a face, make a sandwich, tell a story, tie a shoelace
Grammar	Past simple could/couldn't
Functions	Asking for information I'd like some information about the (Science Museum), please.
Pronunciation	Changing verbs to nouns using the suffix -tion: inform - information, describe - description

Key competences

Linguistic competence: use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–14)

Mathematical, science and technological competences: learn technology vocabulary (L. 1)

Digital competence: use Pupil's Book eBook (L. 1–14)

Social and civic competences: learn to be creative (L. 3); learn to talk about a visit to a museum (L. 12)

Cultural awareness and expression: raise awareness about museums in different countries (L. 9)

Learning to learn: reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–14); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–14); personalisation of language learnt (L. 5 and 9)

Initiative and entrepreneurship: choose a topic for the project (L. 9)

21st Century Skills for Learning and Innovation

Critical thinking	Predicting (L. 11); Problem solving (L. 3); Planning (L. 12); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–14)	
Creativity	Using a code to write sentences (L. 3)	
Communication	Describing objects (L. 1); Telling a story about the past (L. 5 and 6); Talking about past abilities (L. 7 and 8); Challenge game (L. 13); Asking for and giving information (L. 10); Functional dialogue (L. 12)	
Collaboration	Project groupwork (L. 9); Acting out (L. 3)	

Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Pupil's Book p. 30; Activity Book p. 26
- Unit 2 Extra practice: Activity Book pp. 27 and 28
- Unit 2 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, English in action, CLIL
- Unit 2 Test

External exams

Pupil's Book	Activity Book
A1 Movers Speaking Part 3	A1 Movers Listening Part 2
A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 3	A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

Vocabulary

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use technology vocabulary
- Target language: computer, email, smartwatch, keyboard. letter. carry, mouse, telephone, call, tablet, mobile phone, study
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- stopwatch
- a mobile phone or picture of a mobile phone
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- Resource 2 A

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand short, simple descriptions of objects, people and animals, if supported by pictures (GSE 27).
- Listening: Can recognise familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions (e.g. of objects, people or animals), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 24).
- Speaking: Can repeat phrases and short sentences, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 22). Can describe common everyday objects using simple language (GSE 31).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Starting the lesson

- Show pupils a mobile phone and say Look. This is a mobile phone. It uses electricity. Do you know what electricity means? Explain as necessary.
- Ask pupils to find other things in the classroom that use electricity. They raise their hands to offer ideas.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn technology vocabulary.

Practice

Pupil's Book

1) 🗑 How many things can you find that use electricity?

- Refer pupils to page 20. Read the rubric. Give pupils an example: A computer uses electricity. Ask pupils to point to a computer.
- 🗐 Using the Lollipop stick technique, ask pupils to say things that use electricity.
- O Replace pupils in pairs. Pick up the stopwatch and explain that they have one minute to answer the questions together.
- Check answers as a class by having pupils raise their hands.
- Extension Ask pupils to describe the pictures on page 20 in pairs, telling each other where the people are, what they are doing, and naming any objects/places that they know, e.g. the beach.

2.1 Listen, point and repeat.

· Refer pupils to page 21. Ask them how many things in the photos have they already talked about in this lesson.



- Tell pupils to find mobile phone. Ask Can you see the girl in picture 11? She's calling someone. Who do you think she's calling? Pupils look at the pictures and do the activity.
- · Play the audio.
- A Have pupils say a word to their partners for their partner to point to the correct picture. Then they swap.

\(\sum_\) Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 20. Write the missing word.

• 🗐 🎘 Give pupils one minute to work in pairs to find the objects and write the missing word. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick

Extra activity Critical thinking

• 🎎 Pupils say which English words they already know. Put pupils in groups and ask them to have a discussion about the use of English words in their language. Why do we use English words? Can you think of other English words we use?

2.2 What is it? Listen and point to the picture in Activity 2.



· Play the audio. Check the answer by asking pupil to call out the correct number of the picture.

(Sound of keyboard) (Sound of mobile phone) (Sound of mouse clicking) (Sound of phone ringing)

Extra activity TPR

• Hand each pupil an A4 sheet of paper. Tell each pupil a different word from Activity 4 to write on their sheet of paper. Play the audio for Activity 4 again. When pupils hear their object, they hold their sheet of paper up.

🦺 💭 Describe a word to your partner.

- R Place pupils in different pairs for this activity.
- Extension Internet search key words: things that use electricity, tech gadgets, home appliances

Diversity

Challenge

• Repeat Activity 5, with different pupils describing an object in the classroom. The class has to guess what the object is.

Brainstorm verbs pupils connect with the objects before they do Activity 5 in pairs. Write their ideas on the board.

Finishing the lesson

Ask pupils to describe things in the classroom that use electricity.

Lesson 2 Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use technology vocabulary
- Target language: computer, email, smartwatch, keyboard, letter, carry, mouse, telephone, call, tablet, mobile phone, study
- Skills: Writing

Materials

• sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group













computer

keyboard

mouse

tablet









email

letter

telephone

mobile phone









smartwatch

carry

study

- Write the missing word. smartwatch
- What is it? Listen and point to the picture in Activity 2.



🕒 🧘 💭 Describe a word to your partner.



I've got this thing at home. I do homework on it. My mum works on it.

Yes!

A computer?



twenty-one

Global Scale of English (GSE)

• Writing: Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16). Can complete a table or form with specific information extracted from a short, simple written text on a familiar topic (GSE 37).

Assessment for Learning

- - Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
 - Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

• Write names of some technology objects on the board.

- Describe one object using language from the previous lesson.
- Pupils guess the object from the description.
- If you have time, pupils can continue with descriptions and their classmates guess.

Practice

- O Look at Pupil's Book page 20 and complete the
 - A Have pupils check their answers with their partners. Answer key 1 basketball, 2 beard
- Look and write.
 - Pupils work individually to complete the activity. Answer key 2 telephone, 3 mouse, 4 tablet, 5 computer, 6 mobile phone, 7 email, 8 keyboard, 9 letter



Complete the table.

Applis work individually, then compare answers with a partner.

Answer key carry: a bag; call: a friend, the doctor; study: Maths, grammar

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils write descriptions of the objects they like best from Pupil's Book Activity 2.

Finishing the lesson

- Pupils close their books and work in groups of three. Tell groups to draw 12 boxes on a sheet of A4 paper.
- Using the Summative questions technique, ask Howmany words did you remember? Which words are harder to remember? Why is that? Can you spell them correctly?

Lesson 3



😰 What does Millie say? Go to page 66 to find out. CLI

Hello Katy! Hello Bo!

After you read Match the sentence halves. Hello Hamed!

- 1 Hamed's project is about b
- 2 Ten years ago, people sent e
- 3 100 years ago, people in big houses a
- 4 Millie has an idea c
- 5 The children make a speaking tube d
- 6 Act out the story.
- ⑥ ∰ Make sentences in Discovery Team code about what you did (I played football! last weekend.

a used speaking tubes to talk to each other.

- **b** how things were different ten years ago.
- **c** for a secret Discovery Team code.
- **d** to go between their two houses.
- e emails and letters.

Iay layedpay ootballfay!

twenty-three 23



- Lesson aims: to listen to a story
- Target language: revision of technology vocabulary; can, hose,
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- objects/drawings of a can, a hose and string
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils
- Resource 6

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32). Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39)
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- **Speaking:** Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Happy/Sad face technique

Peer learning: groupwork; pairwork; acting out

Starting the lesson

• Write the first three letters of the technology words from Lesson 1 on the board. Ask different pupils to complete the words.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to a story.

Practice

Pupil's Book

- 🚺 Before you read How many different types of phone can you find in the story?
 - · Refer pupils to pages 22 and 23.

2 🞧 2.3 Listen and read.

- Pre-teach can, hose and string with objects or drawings. Say Look. This is a can/a hose/some string. and have pupils repeat.
- · Play the audio.
- Check comprehension: Whose project is it? (Hamed's) Did Hamed's mum and dad have a tablet? (No) Who gave Millie the idea for the

🗿 🚰 What does Millie say? Go to page 66 to find out.

- Pupils discuss in pairs.
- 🕽 Using the Happy/Sad face technique, ask Did you find out what Millie said?

Extra activity Creativity

• Republis work in pairs and design their own speaking tube on a sheet of A4 paper. They label the parts of their tube and show it to the class.

After you read Match the sentence halves.

• Pupils work individually to complete the activity. Ask different pupils to read out the complete sentences.

Diversitu

Challenge

• Pupils memorise the second halves of the sentences. Read out the first halves of the sentences and ask different pupils to say the other half

Support

• Republic compare answers with a partner before feedback.

6 Act out the story.

- 🎥 Divide pupils into groups of four. Allocate a role to each pupil (Katy, Millie, Hamed and Bo).
- Pupils act out the story in groups.

💪 🌟 Make sentences in Discovery Team code about what you did last weekend.

- RP Put pupils in pairs. Give pairs a sheet of A4 paper for their
- · Pupils swap codes with other pairs and decipher them.

Extra activity TPR

• Assign is/are to the left wall and was/were to the right wall. Read sentences from the story with these forms for pupils to face the correct wall.

Finishing the lesson

- Put pupils in groups of three and have them discuss what happened in the story.
- Ask different pupils to feed back to the class.

Lesson 4 Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to review a story
- Target language: revision of technology vocabulary; can, hose,
- Skills: Reading, Writing

Materials

notebooks

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Traffic light cards technique Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

How to work with stories

Stage 1 - Before listening to the story

First, talk to pupils about the characters appearing in the story and about the places in which they appear. Ask pupils what they can see in the pictures and invite them to guess what will happen in the story. Remember to praise pupils for all their ideas, but do not correct them and do not explain too much. (In a moment pupils will listen to the recording and check if they were right). Focus more on what occurred in the story than on the language itself. First, pupils will understand the story as a whole, then they will remember the vocabulary used in the story.

Stage 2 - Listening to the story

At this stage remember to encourage pupils to compare their previous ideas with what actually happened in the story. Play the recorded story and ask pupils to point to the appropriate pictures in the Pupil's Book.

Stage 3 - After listening to the story

After listening to the story together, ask pupils a few questions about it to make sure that they understood what happened. When answering, pupils additionally practise and consolidate the previously introduced language material.

Stage 4 - Acting out

After having listened to the story a few times, your pupils should be ready to act it out. Pupils can contribute to the story, first by making particular gestures and then, depending on the difficulty of the text, by using simple phrases. You may also play particular parts of the recording and ask pupils to repeat them each time.

Next, you may divide pupils into groups and ask each of them to say the lines of one character. Under the teacher's supervision and on the basis of the pictures, pupils quote the lines of appropriate characters. To make this exercise more interesting, you can bring items to be used as props

Suggested exercises

- Ask pupils to draw a scene from the story they have heard.
- Ask pupils to invent another ending for the story they have heard.
- Pupils draw their favourite character.
- Talk to pupils about what the characters learnt.
- Ask pupils about the way they would behave or feel if they were one of the characters.
- Read some lines from the story. Pupils should provide the name of the character who says the lines.

Starting the lesson

• Ask pupils to tell you what happens in the story from the previous lesson. Replay the audio if you have time.

Practice

- After you read Look, read and match. Then write Katy,
 Millie, Hamed or Bo.
 - Easily Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. Pupils check their answers in groups.

Answer key 2 d, Was everything very different 10 years ago? Bo; 3 a, Look at this picture of a speaking tube! Katy; 4 c, Let's use this code mum told me about! Millie

- 2 Correct the mistakes.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually.
 Answer key 2 Jerash, 3 computer, 4 speaking tube, 5 code
- 3 Values Read and tick (✔). Who's being creative?
 - \cong Pupils tick and then compare answers with a partner. **Answer key** 3 \checkmark , 5 \checkmark
- Make your own version of Millie's code. Then write a message. Can your partners break the code?
 - Ask pupils to make their own version of Millie's code and write a message. They swap messages with a partner and see if they can break each other's code.
 - Check pupils know what to do using the Traffic light cards technique.

Extra activity Fast finishers

Pupils find be in the present and be in the past in the story. They
write the words in their notebooks under two separate headings.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they learnt about old technology from the story.

CLIL Link

In Unit 2, the story is based around the concept of technology and machines from the Science curriculum.

Hamed shows his school project, which has old pictures of his family, to the girls, and they explain to Bo how telephones and computers used to be years ago. Katy finds out information about the first telephone and they build a speaking tube to speak to each other from house to house.

To explore the concept of technology and machines further, you can use Resource 6.

- Lesson aims: to learn and use the Past simple
- Target language: Did you have a phone ten years ago? That computer was really big!
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Speaking

Materials

- Resource 11 A
- notehooks

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by questions (GSE 35).
- Writing: Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about common past activities, using simple linking words (GSE 41). Can retell the main points of an extended story in their own words (GSE 54). Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique

Peer learning: pairwork; Three facts and a fib technique

Starting the lesson

- Write Millie's code on the board. Ask What was Millie's code? Can you write 'Hello Hamed' in the code? and elicit answers.
- · Ask pupils what they remember from the story: What was Hamed's project about? What was a speaking tube? What did the Discovery Team use to make their speaking tube?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use the Past simple.
- Write Today and Ten years ago on the board. Write use under Today and used under Ten years ago.
- Write is, are, have, write under Today. Ask different pupils to write the Past simple of these verbs under Ten years ago.

Practice

Pupil's Book

- Look back! Tick (🗸) the sentence in this picture.
 - Refer pupils to pages 22-24.

2 🎧 2.4 Listen and repeat.

- · Play the audio.
- Write on the board We had a phone ten years ago and ____ you ____ a phone? Ask pupils to say the correct question word and form of have to complete the sentence.
- Write Yes, we ____. But we _ _ a mobile phone. Ask pupils to say the correct missing words and complete the sentences.
- Draw pupils' attention to was/were. Ask Do we need the question word Did? and elicit No. Ask How do we answer? With did or was/ were? Didn't or wasn't/weren't? and elicit the answers.
- Draw pupils' attention to the irregular verbs. Tell pupils to look at the list at the back of their Activity Books and ask the meaning of any verbs they don't know.

Diversity

Challenge

• Pupils work in pairs and write sentences in the Past simple with the verb find: an affirmative sentence, a question, a short answer and a negative sentence.

Boy:

· Have pupils copy the examples from the board into their notebooks.

📵 🮧 2.5 Put the pictures in the correct order. 💻 Then listen and check.







My name's Ali. This story is about my dad. Thirty years ago, when my dad was a child, something really frightening happened to him. He went on holiday to Agaba with his family. He went to the beach. He played with his sister, and they ate ice creams. Then he went swimming in the sea. He didn't go swimming near the lifeguards. Suddenly, he started moving out to sea. He tried to swim back to the beach, but the sea was too strong. He was a long way out when the lifeguards came to get him on their surfboards. It's good there are lifeguards on the beach because my grandma didn't have a mobile phone to call for help. Now, my dad is always very careful and swims near the lifeguards.

Extra activity Critical thinking

- Place pupils in pairs. Using the Three facts and a fib technique, pupils write sentences about last weekend. Have them share their sentences to see if they can identify the false information.
- Retell Ali's story. Write the past tense of the verbs in brackets.
 - 📻 Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.
- 🟮 🦺 💭 Tell your partner about a story from your childhood. Include one piece of crazy information.
 - Replace pupils in pairs for this activity and monitor.

Extra activity TPR

• Assign Now to the left wall and Then to the right wall. Read sentences from Ali's story in the present and the past for pupils to face the correct wall.

Finishing the lesson

Put the class into two teams. Call out a verb in the present tense. The first pupil to put up their hand and correctly say the verb in the past tense wins a point for their team.

Lesson 6 Activity Book

Obiectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use the Past simple
- Target language: Did you have a phone ten years ago? That computer was really big!
- Skills: Writing, Listening

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36). Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39)

Grammar Lesson 5

$oldsymbol{0}$ Look back! Tick ($oldsymbol{\checkmark}$) the sentence in this picture.

- 1 Now everyone has mobile phones.
- 2 Mum and Dad didn't have a tablet, but they had a computer.
- **3** 100 years ago, people in big houses used them like a phone.



2 Listen and repeat.

Was everything very different ten years ago?

That computer was really big!

Did you have a phone ten years ago?

Yes, we did! We had a phone in the house, but we didn't have a mobile phone.



Last month / weekend ... A long time ago / Two days ago / Ten years ago ...



Regular verbs:

play \rightarrow played, try \rightarrow tried **Irregular verbs**:

have \rightarrow had, find \rightarrow found

Nore verbs in Activity Book page 64.

3 (3) Put the pictures in the correct order. Then listen and check.











Retell Ali's story. Write the past tense of the verbs in brackets.

Thirty years ago, when he (1) <u>was</u> (be) a child, Ali's dad

(2) <u>went</u> (go) on holiday to Aqaba with his family.

He (3) <u>went</u> (go) to the beach. He (4) <u>played</u> (play)

with his sister and they (5) <u>ate</u> (eat) ice creams. Then he

(6) <u>went</u> (go) swimming. He (7) <u>didn't go</u> (not/go)

swimming near the lifeguards. Suddenly he (8) <u>started</u> (start)

moving out to sea. He (9) <u>was</u> (be) a long way out when the

lifeguards (10) <u>came</u> (come) to get him on their surfboards.

- Tell your partner about a story from your childhood. Include one piece of crazy information.
- What happened?
- · Where were you?
- Who was with you?



twenty-four

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork



Starting the lesson

• Write four verbs in the present tense on the board. Ask pupils to tell you the past tense for each.

Practice



· Play the audio



1 Where did Fatima go last weekend?

Girl 1: Did you go to the beach last weekend, Fatima?

Girl 2: No, I didn't. It was too cold.
Girl 1: So did you go to the mountains?

Girl 2: No, I didn't. I went to a beautiful forest near here.

Girl 1: Oh, that's nice. I love forests in autumn!

2 What did Tareq have for lunch at school two days ago?

Man: Tareq, what did you have for lunch at school today?

Boy 1: I had noodles, Dad.

Man: OK ... noodles ... and what about yesterday? Did you

eat pizza?

Boy 1: No, I didn't. I had a salad. We ate pizza two days ago.

Man: Oh, OK.

3 What did Zeinab use to write to her granny?

Woman: Zeinab?
Girl 3: Yes. Mum?

Woman: The computer, doesn't work. Did you use it to write

to Granny?

Girl 3: No, Mum. Dad used the computer, and Omar played

with the tablet.

Woman: So what did you use?

Girl 3: I wrote a message with my mobile phone!

4 Which sport did Sami try at the summer camp?

Boy 2: Hi, Sami! Did you enjoy the summer adventure camp?

Boy 3: Oh, yes! But ...

Boy 2: Did you climb?

Boy 3: Well, ... I didn't because ...

Boy 2: And did you go canoeing?
Boy 3: Well, ... I didn't because ...

Boy 2: So what did you do?

Boy 3: Fadi! It was not an adventure camp, it was a

windsurfing camp! So I only tried windsurfing!

Answer key 2 a pizza, 3 b mobile phone, 4 b windsurfing

Look and complete the sentences.

 Pupils complete the activity individually. Check the answers as a class.

Answer key 2 didn't play, played; 3 drank, didn't drink; 4 didn't wear, wore; 5 went, didn't go

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils study the irregular verbs on Activity Book page 64.

Finishing the lesson

 Susing the Summative questions technique, ask Do you understand the grammar? How will you learn the irregular verbs?

Vocabulary and Grammar

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use verbs; to learn and use could/ couldn't, to learn and sing a song
- Target language: post a letter, hold a pen, send an email, win a race, make a face, make a sandwich, tell a story, tie a shoelace
- Skills: Speaking, Listening

Materials

- 16 word cards with one of the following written on each one: hold, a pen, make, a face, make, a sandwich, post, a letter, send, an email, tell, a story, tie, a shoelace, win, a race
- Resources 2 B, 11 B, 15, 19

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Speaking: Can repeat phrases and short sentences, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 22). Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22). Can express ability or lack of ability in relation to basic everyday actions (GSE 31). Can express likes and dislikes in relation to familiar topics in a basic way (GSE 29).
- Listening: Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Starting the lesson

Ask Do you write letters/send emails? Are you good at telling a story? Use the Lollipop stick technique to elicit answers.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn verbs and they will talk about what they could and couldn't do in the past. They will also sing
- Draw pupils' attention to the verbs by writing them on the board: hold, make, post, send, tell, tie and win.
- Tell pupils you are going to do three actions and that they should copy you. Say these sentences and do the actions: I'm holding a pen. I'm making a face. I'm tying my shoelace.
- · Ask Which verbs did you hear? and elicit answers.

Practice

Pupil's Book

1 🕡 2.7 Listen, point and repeat.

- Refer pupils to page 25. Tell them to look at the pictures. Ask Which verbs did we talk about? (hold, make, tie).
- Tell pupils to look at the pictures, listen and answer. Ask What can we post, a letter or an email? Ask Do we send an email? What can you win?
- · Play the audio.
- Pupils work in groups. One pupil mimes an action and the others guess.

Extra activity Collaborative work

• R Hand out one word card each to 16 different pupils. Pupils have to find the pupil with the word card that makes a phrase with their own.

2 🎧 2.8 & 2.9 Listen and sing.

- Play the song and tell pupils to listen only this time
- Read out the song one line at a time for pupils to repeat.
- Play the song again and encourage pupils to join in.
- 2.9 Play the karaoke version of the song again and encourage pupils to sing.

Extra activity TPR

• Pupils listen to the song and hold up the correct number of fingers for each number.

2.10 Listen and repeat.

- · Play the audio.
- Ask What word do we use for can/can't in the past? and elicit could/couldn't.



Diversity

Challenge

- To monitor pronunciation, ask pupils to repeat individually.
- To build confidence, ask pupils to repeat in groups.

🛂 🦺 💭 In pairs, ask and answer. What could you do when you were five? What couldn't you do?

- Place pupils in pairs for this activity and monitor.
- Pupil A: Activity Book, page 60.
 - Pupil B: Activity Book, page 62.
 - 🕮 Place pupils in pairs for this activity and monitor.

Finishing the lesson

Ask pupils to give a short presentation to the class about what they could do when they were five. Encourage the class to be supportive and to clap.

Lesson 8 **Activity Book**

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use verbs; to learn and use could/couldn't
- Target language: post a letter, hold a pen, send an email, win a race, make a face, make a sandwich, tell a story, tie a shoelace When I was (one), I could (walk), but I couldn't (talk).
- Skills: Listening, Writing

Materials

notebooks

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36). Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).



Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Put pupils into groups. Ask them to find out what group members were good at when they were five.
- · Ask pupils to tell the class about their groups.

Practice

- Reorder the letters. Then match.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually. Check the answers as

Answer key: 2 win, race, b; 3 post, letter, a; 4 tell, story, d; 5 make, sandwich, g; 6 send, email, f; 7 tie, shoelace, h; 8 make, face, c

- \bigcirc 2.11 Listen and tick (\checkmark) or cross (X). What could or couldn't they do when they were younger?
 - · Play the audio.
 - Encheck answers using the Lollipop stick



- 1 Girl 1: I'm Salwa. When I was younger, I couldn't post a letter because the letter box was very high! But I could make a face. It was very funny!
- 2 Boy 1: I'm Osama and this is Ibrahim. We couldn't tie a shoelace when we were younger. It was too difficult! But we could win races because we were the fastest at school!

- 3 Girl 2: I'm Eman, and this is my sister, Rola. When we were younger, we could make a delicious sandwich with cheese. Our mum loved it! But we couldn't send an email.
- 4 Boy 2: I'm Abbas. I couldn't hold a pen when I was younger, but I could tell stories to my teddy bears!

Answer key 2 a win a race ✓, 2 b tie a shoelace ✗, 3 a make a sandwich 🗸, 3 b send an email 🗶, 4 a hold a pen 🗶, 4 b tell a story 🗸

- 3 Look at Activity 2 and write.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually and check answers in pairs.
 - En pairs, have pupils say what they couldn't do last year but what they can do now. Monitor and check.

Answer key 2 could win races, but they couldn't tie a shoelace; 3 could make a sandwich, but they couldn't send an email; 4 couldn't hold a pen, but he could tell stories

Extra activity Fast finishers

· Pupils write the collocations in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

• 🕯 Using the Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they have learnt today. Have them write their answers in their notebooks. Ask some pupils to tell you their answers.

- Lesson aims: to learn about museums around the world; to write a guide for a museum
- Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

- notebooks
- paper/card and coloured pencils
- leaflets or printouts with information about museums in your
- True/False response cards

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 41).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can express likes and dislikes in relation to familiar topics in a basic way (GSE 29). Can give simple reasons to explain preferences, given a model (GSE 35).
- Writing: Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16). Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Monitoring pupils' learning: True/False response cards technique

Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

• Write museum on the board. Ask What museums are there in your country? What museums have you visited?

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about different types of museums from around the world.

Culture notes.

- The Jordan Museum is a famous museum in Amman, Jordan, that contains the country's most important archaeological findings, including the Dead Sea Scrolls. The museum was opened in 2014.
- The Shanghai Museum of Science and Technology has 14 permanent exhibitions. There is also a special science exhibition and there are IMAX cinemas.
- The Natural History Museum opened in London, England, in 1881. It is well known for its collection of dinosaur bones and fossils.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Before you read What are your favourite museums?

• Encourage a class discussion, e.g. Do you have a different favourite museum? What do you prefer about it?

• Ask pupils to look at the icons next to the museum names and the photos. Have pupils predict what they will see in the

2 🎧 2.12 Listen and read.

- Ask pupils to look at the photos again.
- · Play the audio for pupils to listen and follow in their Pupil's Books.
- · Ask pupils to take turns to read the texts aloud. Then ask comprehension questions, e.g. Where is the Jordan Museum? (Amman) What can you see there? (ancient objects, statues) What can you see in the Shanghai Museum of Science and Technology? (technology, Chinese inventions from long ago) What dinosaur bones can you see in the Natural History Museum? (T-Rex bones)
- Ask a volunteer to read the Fun fact. Ask Have you visited the Jordan Museum? Would you like to?
- **Extension** Pupils work in pairs and invent their own museum. They decide what they want to show the public.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in groups of four and think of the advantages of visiting museums. They try and agree on the top three ideas and then present those to the class.

After you read Activity Book, page 22.

• Pupils turn to page 22 in their Activity Books and complete the activities.

Extra activity TPR

• Pupils use their True/False response cards to react to the following sentences.

You can see statues in the Jordan Museum. (True) You can see robots in the Jordan Museum. (False) You can watch films in the Shanghai Museum. (True) There was a real earthquake when the girl went to the Natural History Museum in London. (False)

🙆 💭 Which museum do you want to visit? Why?

• Rupils discuss the museums in groups. They give reasons for why they prefer one museum to another. Then they put them in order of preference. Have a class discussion.

Diversity

Challenge

• R Write Living Museum on the board and explain that a living museum is a place that recreates a time in history. Put pupils into pairs. They think about what their Living Museum will be like.

Support

• Ask further questions about the museums in the texts to help pupils understand. Ask, e.g. Are you interested in paintings? Which museum has paintings and sculptures?

Project

Write a guide to a museum.

- 👛 Divide pupils into groups of four. Give each group some paper or card and some coloured pencils.
- Explain that pupils must work on the museum of their choice. They should provide pictures and at least four facts.
- · Monitor and help groups when necessary.
- Each group reads their guide to the class like a tour guide. They should read one fact each.
- · Make a classroom display.





World museums

Last year,
I visited some
amazing museums.
I love learning about
the past, and in these
museums I learned
a lot of different
things.



The Jordan Museum

I went to Amman, Jordan, and I visited the Jordan Museum. It's a museum where you can see ancient objects from Jordan's past. I saw some very famous statues there. They are some of the oldest statues ever made: they're around 9,000 years old! They were amazing.



Shanghai Museum of Science and

Technology
I like science and technology, so
I love this museum in Shanghai,
in China. You can explore
technology from today, and also
learn about Chinese inventions
from hundreds of years ago.
There are lots of activities for
children. I did a science workshop
and learned all about robot
design. I also watched a film
about space exploration. It was
fantastic!



Natural History Museum

I visited this museum in London, England, on holiday. Here I saw a T-Rex and a blue whale, and I learned about plants and volcanoes! Do you know what an earthquake is? It's when the earth shakes! At the Natural History Museum, I went into a room and the floor started shaking like an earthquake! It was so exciting!



Did you know that the Jordan Museum is the biggest museum in Jordan?



- 2) 🔐 Listen and read.
- 3 After you read
 - >> Activity Book, page 22.
- Which museum do you want to visit? Why?

I want to visit ... because ...

26

twenty-six



Write a quide to a museum.

- 1 In groups, choose a museum in your country.
- 2 Find information about your museum:
- What can you see there?
- What can you do there?
- 3 Write about your museum.
- 4 Tell the class about your museum. Act as tour quides.
- 5 Have a class vote: which museum do you want to visit?

THE CHILDREN'S MUSEUM

The Children's Museum is in Amman, in Jordan. You can see ... You can learn about ...



Activity Book

Find the words and write. Then find the hidden message.

- Ask pupils to read the words in the box. Make sure they understand them.
- Pupils label the pictures and then they find the words in the puzzle. They check answers in pairs.

Answer key b volcano, c shake, d inventions, e technology, f earthquake, g explore; The Science Museum is my favourite because I can learn how things work.

After you read Read and answer.

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Check answers as a class.

Answer key 2 Natural History Museum, 3 Natural History Museum, 4 The Jordan Museum, 5 Shanghai Museum, 6 Shanghai Museum

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils write ten important words from the text in the Pupil's Book in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

 Susing the Summative questions technique, write What was the best thing in the lesson for you? on the board. Have pupils answer the question in their notebooks.

Englishinaction

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn to ask for information; to learn and practise changing verbs to nouns using the suffix -tion
- Target language: I'd like some information about the Science Museum, please.
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- Yes/No response cards
- a ball
- projects from Lesson 9
- Resource 23

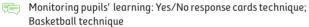
Global Scale of English (GSE)

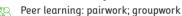
- Reading: Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 32).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).
- Listening: Can identify specific information in short, simple dialogues, if there is some repetition and rephrasing (GSE 34). Can identify the context of short, simple dialogues related to familiar everyday situations (GSE 32).
- Speaking: Can act out a short dialogue or role play, given prompts (GSE 38).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique

Starting the lesson

Ask pupils questions for them to respond with their Yes/No response cards. Ask Do you like museums? Can you learn about technology at the London Science Museum? Do you want to visit the Science Museum?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to ask for information.
- Display pupils' projects from Lesson 9 on the board. Ask one question about what you can see at each museum.
- Ask the class to turn around and move to the back of the classroom. Using the Basketball technique, ask the class questions about the projects, e.g. Where can you see ...?

Practice

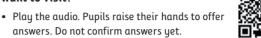
Pupil's Book

- 1 🗑 Circle the things you can see in a natural history museum. Underline the things you can see in a science
 - Refer pupils to page 27. Pupils discuss in pairs and complete the activity, then raise their hands to offer answers.

Extra activity Collaborative work

• Pupils work in groups of three or four. They look up meanings of new words in class or in online dictionaries. Encourage pupils to keep a vocabulary list at the back of their notebooks.

2 🮧 2.13 Listen. Which museum does Abbas want to visit?





3 2.14 Listen, read and check.

- Play the audio again for pupils to listen and read Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the Say it! box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class. Explain meanings if necessary.



Diversity

Challenge

Have pupils practise the conversation in Activity 3 in pairs. Make sure they copy the intonation correctly.

• Have pupils practise the conversation as a class to copy intonation. Play the audio, pausing after each sentence, and have pupils repeat.

Extra activity TPR

• Read out the questions and answers in the Say it! box in random order. Assign questions to half the class and answers to the other half of the class. Pupils all stand up. They sit down accordingly when they hear a question or an answer.

🗿 🦺 💭 In pairs, ask for and give information about a different museum.

• Republication of the Pupil A and Pupil B. Pupil A and Pupil B. Pupil A asks for information and Pupil B gives information. Then pupils swap roles and Pupil B asks.

Pronunciation

5 🎧 2.15 Listen and read. What do you notice about the coloured words?



- Play the audio. Play it again, pausing after each line, and have pupils repeat. Play it a third time and have pupils say what they notice about the words in red. Ask them which words are verbs (inform, describe). Ask How do we change these verbs to nouns? (we add -tion)
- Extension 🎥 Place pupils in groups of four. Ask them to think of other verbs that we can change into nouns by adding -tion (create - creation, imagine - imagination, etc.)
- · Ask groups to share their words with the class.

Activity Book

Match the sentence halves.

Answer key 2 q, 3 d, 4 b, 5 e, 6 a, 7 f

- 2 🎧 2.16 Complete the dialogue with the sentences in Activity 1. Then listen and check.
 - Pupils work individually. Then they listen and check.



Answer key 2 What do you want to know?; 3 What can you see and do there?; 4 You can learn about animals, plants and volcanoes.; 5 What time does it open and close?; 6 It's open every day from 11 am to 5 pm.; 7 Thank you very much.

 \P Circle the things you can see in a natural history museum. <u>Underline</u> the things you can see in a science museum.

robots dinosaurs planes (plants) butterflies

Listen. Which museum does Abbas want to visit? the Science Museum



Hello. I'd like some information about the Science Museum. please.

What can you see and do there?

It sounds great! What time does it open and close?

OK. Thank you very much!

I'd like some information about ..., please. What can you see and do there? You can learn about ... What time does it open and close? It's open every day from 10 am until 6 pm. Yes, of course. What do you want to know?

You can learn about space rockets, planes, computers and many other things!

It's open every day from 10 am until 6 pm.

You're welcome! Enjoy your visit!

🙆 🧘 💭 In pairs, ask for and give information about a different museum.

Pronunciation

Listen and read. What do you notice about the coloured words?



I'd like to inform you that there's a lot of information in the museum.

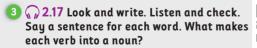
> I can describe the dinosaur. I'll write a good description.





twenty-seven





- · Pupils complete the table with the words in the box.
- Play the audio to check answers.
- RP Put pupils in pairs and ask them to make sentences using the words. Monitor and help where necessary.
- · Ask pupils how we change the verbs into nouns (we add the suffix -tion).

Answer key Verb: decorate, celebrate; Noun: donation, education



Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils close their books and write down four things they remember from this lesson.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask How easy/ hard were the words in the Pronunciation activity to pronounce? What can you do to improve pronunciation?





- Lesson aims: to read and understand a reading text
- Target language: revision of grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Writing

Materials

- a ball
- Resource 27

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can identify key information in short, simple factual texts from the headings and illustrations (GSE 33). Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can identify the main idea of each paragraph in extended structured texts on familiar topics (GSE 51).
- **Listening**: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20). Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



technique

Monitoring pupils' learning: Basketball technique; Lollipop stick Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Two stars and a wish



technique Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions

Starting the lesson

- * Write the following questions on the board: Where can you read blogs? Who can write a blog? What can you write about in a blog? Are blogs interesting? Put pupils in groups of four and ask them to discuss the questions.
- · Ask for class feedback.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will read a blog about cardboard.
- Pre-teach cardboard, company, bridge and engineer. Write the words on the board. Say sentences to explain the meanings. Say Do you eat cereal? Well, a cereal box is made of cardboard. A food company makes cereal. How do you cross a river? Well, you walk across a bridge. Are bridges made of cardboard? Did you know that a person who designs a bridge is called an engineer?

Diversity

Challenge

• Ask pupils extra questions using the new vocabulary, e.g. What else do we use cardboard for? What else can an engineer design? Are there any famous bridges in your country?

• Point to the words on the board as you say the sentences. Explain meanings if necessary.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 Before you read Look at the title. What do you already know about cardboard?

- Refer pupils to page 28. Pupils discuss in pairs first. Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils for ideas.
- Extension Pupils raise their hands and say what objects they use that are made of cardboard.

2.18 Listen and read.





- Ask pupils to say what information they think is amazing.
- Check comprehension with questions. Ask Where was the engineer from? (Scotland) What was in the thin boxes? (cereal) Is cardboard strong? (yes) What shapes are in cardboard? (triangles)
- · Read the text aloud to pupils for extra pronunciation practice. They shout *Stop!* when they hear a regular verb in the Past simple. They say the sound of the ending. They then write the verbs on the board under the headings d and id. Ask pupils which sound is missing and have them suggest verbs with the t sound.

After you read Write the paragraph number for each heading.

- · Give pupils a minute to complete the activity individually.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.
- Extension Internet search key words: facts about cardboard

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Rupils work in pairs. They find the key information in each paragraph of the text that helped them do Activity 3.

Paragraph 1: amazing information, cardboard

Paragraph 2: 1879, 1906

Paragraph 3: Today

Paragraph 4: why cardboard is so strong Paragraph 5: triangle shapes everywhere Pupils raise their hands to offer feedback.

Extra activity TPR

• Play the audio for the blog again. Pupils nod every time they hear the word cardboard and shake their heads every time they hear the word triangle/triangles.

Activity Book

After you read Look, read and match.

• Rive pupils one minute to complete the activity. They compare answers with a partner.

Answer key 2 a, 3 d, 4 e, 5 b, 6 f

Complete the sentences.

• R Pupils complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner before class feedback.

Answer key 1 engineer, cardboard; 2 different; 3 strong, inside; 4 triangle, bridges

Skills Lesson 11

Reading

- 1) Before you read Look at the title. What do you already know about cardboard?
- 2 Listen and read.



←→C☆

Mustafa's science blog

cardboard

How cardboard is like a bridge

- Hello, everyone! Today, I visited a museum and found out a lot of amazing information about cardboard!
- In 1879, a Scottish engineer called Robert Gair invented the cardboard box. In 1906, a cereal company started using very thin cardboard boxes for its cereal.
- 3 Today, we use cardboard boxes for many different things because cardboard is so strong.
- 4 Do you know why cardboard is so strong? Inside each piece of cardboard, there are a lot of triangles. Triangles are really strong: they can carry a lot.
- 5 I learned that there are triangle shapes everywhere: in bridges, in houses, on bikes and even on kites!

triangle





- After you read Write the paragraph number for each heading.
 - a Triangles everywhere
 - **b** Introduction
 - c Why cardboard is strong
 - d History of cardboard
 - e Cardboard today
- 5
- 1____
- 2
- 2

28

twenty-eight

- 3 & \(\sum \) Think about an object made of cardboard you have at home. What it it? Where is it? Write. Then compare in pairs.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually. Monitor and help.
 - SP Pupils read and compare their writing with a partner using the Two stars and a wish technique. Ask different pairs to talk about their objects and then ask for class feedback.

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils write key words and their meanings from the text in their notebooks.

- Using the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask Was the blog easy/hard to understand? Did you manage to match the headings to the paragraphs? How did you do it? Will you read blogs online now? and encourage class discussion.
- Extension Internet search key words: blogs for kids, blogging for kids



- Lesson aims: to understand a listening task; to talk about a visit to a museum; to write a report about a visit
- Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- Resource 31

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38).
- Listening: Can extract factual information from short, simple dialogues or stories about past events, if spoken slowly and clearly and guided by questions or prompts (GSE 39).
- Speaking: Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).
- Writing: Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Basketball technique; Happy/Sad face technique



Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique; groupwork



Independent learning: Learning diary

Starting the lesson

2.8 Play the song from Lesson 7 and encourage pupils to join in.



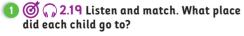
Presentation

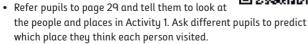
- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to children talking about places they visited on holiday, talk about a visit to a museum and then write a report about a visit to an interesting place.
- 🗐 Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils to say what they like to see at a museum or do on holiday.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Listening





- · Play the audio.
- Pupils compare answers with a partner. Ask one pupil to confirm the answers.

Woman: Salwa and her cousins, Aisha and Jameel, are talking about places they visited on holiday. What place did each child ao to?

Girl 1: Hi, Aisha! Hi, Jameel!

Girl 2: Hi, Salwa! Did you have a good summer? How was your holidau?

It was great, thanks! We went to Paris for a week. I loved it! Girl 1:

Girl 2: What did you do there?

Girl 1: We walked a lot! We visited parks, we went to the zoo, and we went to one of the most famous art museums in the world: the Louvre.

Girl 2: It sounds fun! I went to a museum, too, when I was on holidau.

Girl 1: What kind of museum was it?

It was a car museum. My mum loves cars. I didn't think it Girl 2: was very interesting, though! I like bikes better! How about you, Jameel? What did you do on holiday? Girl 1:

Boy: I visited my granny. She lives at the seaside. I love going there. I didn't go to any museums, but I went to a funfair. I

went on a rollercoaster. It was the best!

Speaking

Talk about a visit to a museum.

- Pupils work in pairs.
- B When they have talked about a visit to a museum, pupils then repeat the activity with a new partner.
- · Ask different pupils to talk to the class about their visits.

Diversity

Challenge

· Ask pupils what tense they should use in the Speaking activity and elicit Past simple.

• Have two pupils read out the example. Point out that the tense used is the Past simple. Brainstorm as a class some useful questions for the Speaking activity and write them on the board, e.g. What was it like?

Writing

Read the report. Where did Kamal go?

- Give pupils a minute to read the text and find the answer.
- Check comprehension with questions. Ask When did Kamal go there? (20th September) Why is the building special? (It's beautiful.) What was inside? (art)

Extra activity TPR

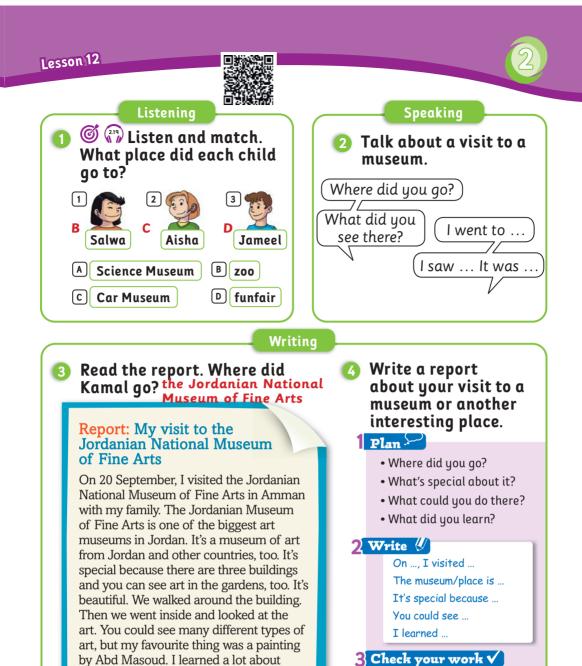
• 🗐 Using the Happy/Sad face technique, pupils respond to your questions. Ask Do you understand Kamal's report? Do you feel confident about writing a report now?

Write a report about your visit to a museum or another interesting place.

- · Read the Writing tip to pupils. Tell pupils to find the date in Kamal's report. Pupils think about what each paragraph is about.
- Read the plan to pupils. Pupils turn to their Activity Books.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils think of a question for each paragraph in Kamal's report.



ip Writing

With a report about a visit, you are giving information to your reader. Start with the date of the visit. Then organise your work into paragraphs.

Jordanian and world art when I was there.

3 Check your work ✓

- · Started with a date?
- · Used paragraphs?

Activity Book, page 25.

twenty-nine

Activity Book

Read and match the sentences with the paragraph headings.

Answerkey 2d, 3c, 4a

- Write a report about your visit to a museum or another interesting place.
 - Plan: Give pupils one minute to complete their notes.
 - Write: Pupils work individually to complete the report.
 - Check your work: Write the following questions on the board: Did you include the date of the visit? Did you use paragraphs? Did you use linking words? Did you use a capital letter at the start of each sentence? Did you use a full stop at the end of each sentence? Did you use the correct spellings? Was your writing clear? Pupils evaluate their own work by answering the questions.

- check each other's work.
- Extension 🎥 Put pupils in groups and have them make a poster about one of the places they chose in Activity 2. When pupils have finished, make a class display of the posters.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils find the verbs in Kamal's report.

Finishing the lesson

Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary: Today I listened to ..., I described ... and I wrote a description of

- Lesson aims: to review unit language
- · Target language: unit vocabulary
- Skills: Speaking, Writing

Materials

- 16 word cards from Lesson 7
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils
- notebooks

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Speaking: Can say what people are doing at the time of speaking, if supported by pictures or gestures (GSE 30). Can express ability or lack of ability in relation to basic everyday actions (GSE 31). Can ask a range of questions in guessing games to find the answer (GSE 36).
- Writing: Can write about past activities using simple language, given a model (GSE 40). Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Ask pupils a key question about learning grammar, e.g. Why is it important to revise Past simple verbs?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will do revision of the unit vocabulary and then play a game.
- Revise the technology vocabulary on the board with the first three letters missing: call, carry, computer, email, keyboard, letter, mobile phone, mouse, smartwatch, study, tablet, telephone.
- Revise the verbs by writing the nouns on the board: (hold) a pen, (make) a face, (make) a sandwich, (post) a letter, (send) an email, (tell) a story, (tie) a shoelace, (win) a race.
- Revise the Past simple of be, other verbs and could/couldn't. Write Now and Then on the board. Ask pupils to work in pairs and tell each other the Past simple of: is, are, have, write, visit, can, can't. Pupils write the answers on the board.

Extra activity TPR

• Place the word cards around the room. Say a word and choose a pupil to find it. When different pupils have found the words, they find their partner to make phrases.

Practice

Pupil's Book

- 🚺 Look at the picture and answer the questions in your
 - Refer pupils to page 30. Pupils work in pairs and write the answers in their notebooks.
 - Stick technique to check their answers.

What couldn't you do when you were five that you can do

- Republis work in the same pairs and complete the activity.
- Ask different pairs to say one sentence each.

Diversity

Challenge

• Promote class discussion about Activity 2. Ask Who couldn't do that either? What else couldn't you do? Who could do that? Are all five-year-olds the same?

• & Pupils can write some ideas down in notes before talking in pairs in Activity 2.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Rive each pair a sheet of A4 paper. Pupils work in pairs and choose three unit words that are not in Activities 1 or 2. They write a sentence for each word with the word missing and write the words in a word choice box. Pupils swap sentences with another pair and complete each other's sentences.

Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

- Divide the class into two teams. For large classes, divide the class into groups of eight and divide each group into two teams of four.
- Give pupils two minutes to think of three extra questions.
- Monitor the game and award points.

Extra activity Learning skills

• Pupils think of more questions for the Challenge game.

Activity Book

- 🕦 🎎 Read and answer for you. Then, in groups of four, ask and answer the questions and complete the questionnaire.
 - Rupils work individually and then they check in groups.
- Look at Activity 1. Write about what your friends and you could do at the age of five and what you did last year. Write in your notebook.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually. They read their partner's work.

Self-evaluation

· Pupils do the activity individually.

Extra practice

- Find and match.
 - Pupils can work in pairs to complete the activity.
- Write the correct form of the words in brackets.
 - · Pupils complete the activity individually.

Answer key 2 Did, call; 3 didn't study; 4 didn't go; 5 ate; 6 Did,

- 3 What could or couldn't they do when they were six? Look and write.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually.

Answer key 2 couldn't send an email; 3 could post a letter; 4 couldn't tie a shoelace; 5 couldn't win a race; 6 could make a sandwich

Look at the picture and answer the questions in your notebook.



letter, tie a shoelace, tablet, computer, email, keyboard,

- mouse, carry

 Find eight words from this unit.
 - **2** Who is holding something?
 - What is it?

 The dark-haired boy who's in the room. A pen

 3 Who is carrying something?

What is it?
The bland man who's in the kitchen. The shopping

4 Who is thinking about posting a letter?

The dark-haired boy who's in the room upstairs.

 Who is sending an email?
 The woman who's in the living room
 Who is learning something oom downstairs.

- New?The girl who's in the bedroom, tie a shoelace. 7 Who is making a face? The girl in the bedroom.
- 8 Who is making a sandwich?

The man with a moustache who's in the kitchen.

What couldn't you do when you were five that you can do now?

Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.

- 1 Find a beard. (1 point) Dad then and now (Lesson 1)
- 2 What can you see at the Jordan Museum? (1 point) ancient objects, statues (Lesson 9)
- 3 Who invented the cardboard box? (1 point) Robert Gair (Lesson 11)

Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.



thirty

Vocabulary and Grammar reference

- 🚺 Translate the words into your language in your notebook. Add more words to the lists.
 - · Check answers as a class.
- Read and complete.
 - Rupils work individually and check in pairs.

Answer key 2 ago, 3 play, 4 last, 5 When, 6 Did, 7 throw 8 couldn't, 9 What, 10 Could

Finishing the lesson

Write on the board In Unit 2, I can ..., I am good at ..., I am not $\mathit{very}\ \mathit{good}\ \mathit{at}\ldots$. Pupils complete the sentences. Using the Summative questions technique, ask different pupils What do you need to practise more? How?

Next lesson Unit 2 Test

Get ready for...

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to practise for A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 3, Listening Part 2 and Speaking Parts 3 and 4
- Target language: unit vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

· sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 41). Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can understand some details in longer dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if guided by questions or prompts
- **Speaking**: Can describe basic differences between two pictures showing familiar activities, using simple language (GSE 39). Can talk about past events or experiences, using simple language (GSE 41).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: Expert envoy technique; pairwork; groupwork Independent learning: portfolio; Thought-provoking questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Elicit names of technology devices from pupils. They say a word and if it's correct, invite them to come and draw it on the board.
- Give pupils an example of a sentence with a prompt, e.g. email I sent an email to my grandma yesterday because she was ill. Ask pupils to say other sentences with prompts, using the Lollipop stick technique.
- 2.9 Play the karaoke version of the song from Lesson 7 and encourage pupils to sing.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will revise the work from the unit and practise for the A1 Movers exams.

Practice

Pupil's Book

A1 Movers Speaking Part 3



- Tell pupils that this is practice for the A1 Movers Speaking Part 3
- First, pupils look at each set of four pictures carefully and decide which one is different in each set.
- In groups of three, pupils discuss which picture is different and give their reasons why.

A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 3

🔼 🌀 Read the text. Choose a word from the box. Write the correct word.

- Tell pupils that this is practice for the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 3 exam.
- Pupils look at the pictures and words and read the text. Tell them it's important to look at the word before and after the gaps before they choose an option.
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Check as a class.

Diversity

Challenge

• \Longrightarrow Hand a sheet of A4 paper to each pupil. Ask them to write about their favourite device and say why. Write prompts on the board if necessary: I like using $my \dots I$ like it because $\dots I$ use it to I really love my ... because Encourage pupils to keep their work in their portfolios.

Support

• Write on the board the following gapped sentences. Have pupils give options to complete them: I send I talk to my friends on

Extra activity Collaborative work

• & Divide the class into groups. Ask them to discuss what they liked about the unit using the Expert envoy technique. Pupils write their opinion about the unit under the lesson headings. The envoy reports back to the class.

Activity Book

A1 Movers Listening Part 2

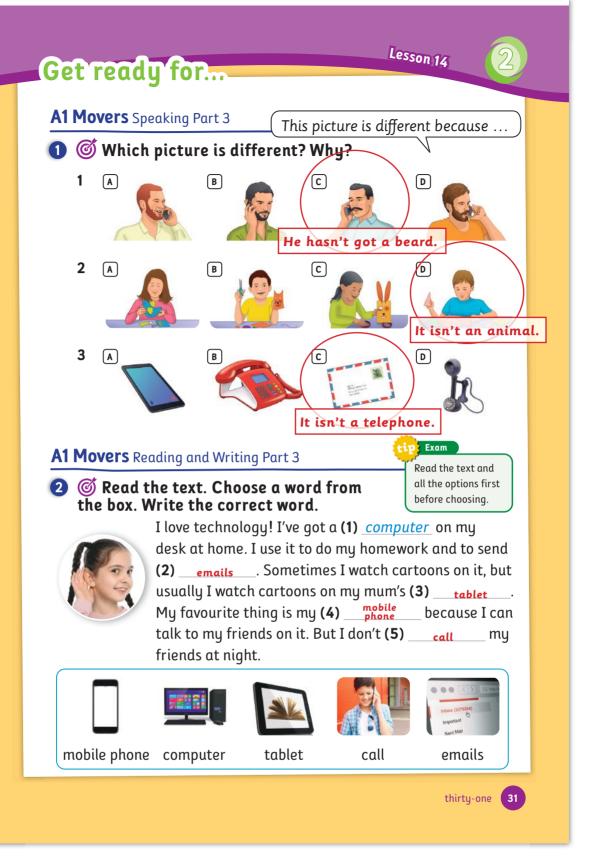
1 Do! (a) 2.20 Listen and write.



- Tell pupils that this is practice for the A1 Movers Listening Part 2 exam. Tell them to read the text and try to predict the answers
- · Play the audio for pupils to complete the information. Play the audio again if necessary.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Answer key 2 mobile phones, 3 play, 4 2 o'clock, 5 home

- 1 Girl: Hi, Jamal! Where were you yesterday? I phoned you, but you didn't answer.
 - Hi, Dana. I went to the Computer and Technology Boy: Museum.
 - Sorry, I didn't hear you. The Computer and the what Museum?
 - The Computer and Technology Museum, T - E - C - H - N - O - L - O - G - Y.
 - Girl: Ah, OK.
- And what did you see there? 2 Girl:
 - It was very interesting. We could see the oldest computers in history!
 - Girl: Wow! And could you see the oldest tablets, too?
 - Boy: I'm afraid not, but we could use the most modern mobile phones
 - Girl: How exciting!
- 3 Girl: Were there any interesting activities?
 - Yes, of course! We couldn't use the old computers, but we could send emails and play games on the newest mobile phones!
- Girl: Wow!
- 4 Girl: Did you go to the museum in the morning?
 - No, we didn't. We were very busy in the $\bar{\text{morning}}$. We arrived at the museum in the afternoon, at 2 o'clock.



5 Girl: Can you eat in the museum?

Boy: You can eat in the café at the museum, but we didn't have lunch there. We made some sandwiches and ate them at home. We went to the museum after lunch.

Girl: Cool!

A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

- 2 🎯 Let's talk about you. Answer the questions.
 - Read the questions aloud for the class and point out the corresponding speech bubble.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually.
 - Pupils work in pairs and take turns to ask and answer the questions.

- Ask How did you get on in Unit 2? Which lesson did you like best?
 Which words were the easiest and most difficult to remember?
- Susing the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask pupils how successful their learning is so far and, on a scale of 1–5, have them rate how much they enjoyed this unit.
- Congratulate pupils on completing the unit.

Language booster 1

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to consolidate and extend vocabulary and grammar
- Target language: make a pizza, bake a cake, do an experiment, build a robot, make a rocket, visit a museum
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- stopwatch or timer

Assessment for Learning

ዏ

Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique; Traffic light cards technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: portfolio; Summative questions technique

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow a simple dialogue about familiar, everyday activities (GSE 31).
- Listening: Can identify specific information in short, simple dialogues in which speakers make arrangements to do something, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can repeat phrases and short sentences, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 16). Can talk about their hobbies and interests, using simple language (GSE 34). Can make simple arrangements to meet or do something (GSE 39).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

Mapping

Topics

Theme 4: Science and technology

Theme 6: Recreation

Scope and Sequence Matrix

Listening: asking and answering questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something

Speaking: taking turns in pair or group discussions; following rules for discussions (e.g. speaking one at a time about the topics under discussion)

Reading: segmenting long texts into smaller sections and reading one section at a time

Writing: using the writing process to write simple texts (e.g. short stories with pictures)

Viewing and presenting: discussing a newspaper report and telling how the words and pictures work together to convey a particular message and purpose; journaling regularly

Learning Outcomes and Performance Indicators

Listening: respond to oral presentations, instructions or conversations through questions or statements; extract information from an oral text to do a task; identify the topic of oral texts

Speaking: produce two- and three-syllable words with the correct stress; maintain the conversation (keep it going); speak with less preparation and guidance from the teacher and more improvisation; segment long texts into smaller sections and read one section at a time

Reading: reinterpret information through creating an illustration (charts, diagrams, timelines) based on the information in the text; demonstrate understanding of message in stories, fables, or lesson

Writing: use simple and compound sentences to produce a variety of text types (letters, email, memos, reminders)

Viewing and presenting: demonstrate how the words and pictures work together to convey a particular message

Starting the lesson



Presentation

 Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn more vocabulary related to activities and making suggestions.

Practice

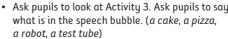
Pupil's Book

🚺 Ö How many hobbies can you say?

- Set a timer to one minute and have pupils say as many hobbies as possible in pairs. They share their ideas around the class and you write them on the board.
- Extension Ask pupils to say their favourite hobby. Give pupils an example. Say, e.g. My favourite hobby is swimming. For this hobby, you need a swimsuit. You can swim in the sea or in a swimming pool.

🔼 🎧 LC1.1 Read and say. Then listen and order. 🔳

- Ask pupils to look at the pictures. Read the words under each picture and have pupils repeat.
- Using the Lollipop stick technique, have volunteers read the words aloud to the class.
- Play the audio for pupils to listen and write the correct number in the box. Check answers as a class.
- 1 build a robot
- 2 visit a museum
- 3 make a pizza
- 4 do an experiment
- 5 make a rocket
- 6 bake a cal





 Tell pupils they are going to listen to a dialogue. Play the audio for pupils to put a tick or cross next to the items.

Girl: Oh, no! It's raining. What shall we do today?

Boy: Um. How about baking a cake?

Girl: No, I'm not very good at baking.

Boy: What about making a pizza?

Girl: No, I'm not hungry.

Boy: All right. How about building a robot? Or making a rocket?

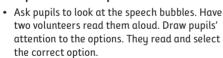
Girl: I'm not great at making things.

Boy: OK ... I know! I got a science kit as a gift. What about doing an experiment?

Girl: Yes! That's a great idea. I love science! Let's do an experiment.



🙆 🎧 LC1.3 🦺 💭 Read and circle. Then listen and practise with a partner.





- Rlay the audio for pupils to check their work. Ask for pairs
- to read the correct dialogue aloud.

What shall we do today? Girl:

Boy: Um. How about visiting a museum?

Girl: No, I don't like museums. What about baking a cake? Boy:

That's a great idea! I love baking.

All right. Let's bake a cake then! Bou:

Diversity

Challenge

In pairs, pupils practise the dialogue, changing the activities each time. The first speech bubble stays the same. Ask volunteers to perform their dialogue for the class.

Support

• Review the vocabulary and grammar with pupils. Point out that How about ...? and What about ...? are ways of making suggestions. Pupils practise making suggestions about other activities.

Activity Book

Write the letters to complete the words.

- Pupils complete the activity individually. Check as a class, having pupils read the complete phrases.
- Ask pupils to mime one of the activities. The rest of the class quesses what it is.

Answer key 2 bake, 3 do, 4 build, 5 make, 6 visit

Match the questions and answers.

- Ask pupils to look at Activity 3. Read the instruction aloud.
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Then check answers as a class.
- Divide the class into pairs. One reads the questions and the other the answers. Swap and repeat.

Answer key 2 c, 3 d, 4 e, 5 a

- All Hand out a sheet of A4 paper to each pupil. They draw themselves doing their favourite activity from today. Suggest they keep their work in their portfolios.
- Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they think about what they learnt today.

<u>Language booster1</u>

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to consolidate and extend vocabulary and grammar
- Target language: make a pizza, bake a cake, do an experiment, build a robot, make a rocket, visit a museum
- Skills: Reading, Speaking, Writing, Grammar

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow a simple dialogue about familiar, everyday activities (GSE 31).
- Speaking: Can make suggestions about what to do, using a few basic fixed expressions (e.g. 'Let's', 'Why don't we ...?') (GSE 42). Can talk about their hobbies and interests, using simple language (GSE 34).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).
- Grammar: Can use 'Let's' to suggest an action (GSE 30).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: portfolio; Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Review the activities from the previous lesson. Spell a word for pupils to say the complete phrase. Say, e.g. C-A-K-E. Pupils say bake a cake. Practise all the activities in this way.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn more vocabulary related to activities and suggestions.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Read and circle.

- Write How about ...? What about ...? Shall we ...? and Let's ... on the board. Explain that these are ways of making suggestions. Tell pupils that we use the gerund after about, e.g. How about going ...? What about making ...?
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Correct as a class.

Write the words to complete the dialogue.

- Pupils look at the word box. Then they complete the dialogue with the correct word.
- 🗐 Check answers as a class using the Lollipop stick technique. Explain any mistakes pupils might have made.
- Pupils practise the dialogue in pairs. Invite pupils to come to the front of the class and act out their dialogues. Repeat with as many pupils as possible.

🕜 🦺 💭 Think. Make suggestions with a partner.

- · Read the grammar box, focusing on the verbs and nouns.
- **LC1.4** Play the audio for pupils to repeat. Go around the class and elicit a possible answer to each question from pupils.
- Pupils work in pairs and form a dialogue using the suggestions and the possible answers.



- · Help and monitor where necessary.
- Pupils write down the questions and answers from their dialogue. Suggest they keep it in their portfolios.

Show what you know

- Ask pupils what they have learnt in Bo's Learning Club pages. Pupils answer the questions in pairs.
- Then they read and complete the Bo Reflection Box individually.
- Extension Use games in the Games Bank to review any new words.

Activity Book

Order the words to complete the dialogue.

- Pupils look at the example. Read the words aloud and then the sentence. Explain that pupils have to order the words.
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Check answers as a class using the Lollipop stick technique. Ask for two volunteers to read out the completed dialogue.

Answer key 2 How about doing an experiment; 3 No, I don't like science; 4 What about making a pizza; 5 Yes, that's a great idea; 6 OK, let's make a pizza

Extra activity TPR

 Divide the class into two teams – Team A and Team B. The team members from each team take it in turns to mime an activity for their own team. The rest of the team has to guess what it is to win a point. For example, one person in Team A mimes baking a cake and his/her teammates say How about baking a cake? Then Team B mimes, e.g. doing an experiment and his/her teammates say What about doing an experiment?

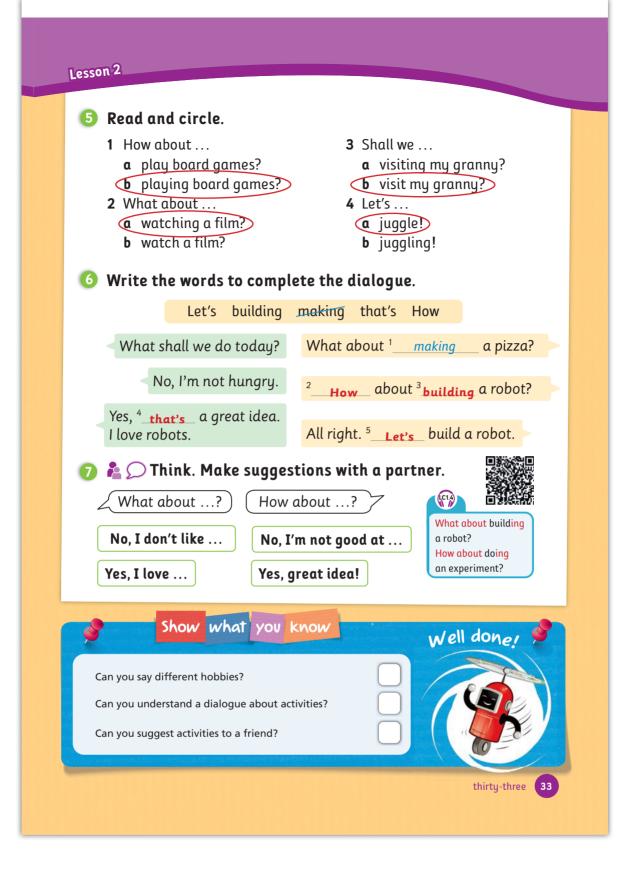
4 Now write your own dialogue. Use the picture prompts.

- Pupils look at the pictures. Ask them to say what they can see and what phrase the picture represents (bake a cake, make a rocket, build a robot, visit a museum, do an experiment, juggle, play video games).
- Pupils write their own dialogue individually. Then they work in pairs and practise each other's dialogue.

🏮 🌟 Draw an indoor activity. Write a suggestion. Share.

- · Pupils think about an indoor activity and draw in the box.
- Then they write a suggestion using How about ...? or What about ...?
- Check what pupils have drawn and ask them to tell the class. Ask pupils to read out their suggestion. They can choose someone in the class to answer with Yes, that's a great idea! or No, I don't like

- Do a class survey on the hobbies and activities in the lessons. Find out which are the most popular. Write them on the board for pupils to vote for their favourite.
- Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they think about what they learnt today.



- Lesson aims: to learn about the rocky planets in our solar
- Target language: core, crater, metal, surface, gas; rock, rocky
- Skills: Reading, Listening

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group of pupils
- Yes/No response cards
- Resource 7

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique; Yes/No response cards technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Write Our solar system on the board. Ask pupils to raise their hands and name any planets they know in our solar system. Tell pupils they will learn the names of the planets and also a lot of interesting things about them in these lessons.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about rocky planets in our solar system. Explain the meaning of rocky if necessary.
- Pre-teach the names of the four rocky planets: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars. Write the names on the board. Draw the Sun and then ask different pupils to draw the planets on the board. Ask pupils to suggest where the planets are. Encourage discussion and then confirm where each planet should be.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Think What do you know about planets?

- Refer pupils to page 34. Read the question. Pupils discuss for one minute in groups of three or four. They then raise their hands to offer ideas to the class.
- Extension Internet search key words: European Space Agency, Kids, planets and the solar system

Learn LC1.5 Listen and read.

- · Before pupils read, draw their attention to the photos. Read out the words, have pupils point to the correct photo and repeat. Explain meanings if necessary.
- · Play the audio.



• Check comprehension with questions. Ask How many planets are in our solar system? (eight) What kind of scientists study planets? (space scientists) What do they need to see planets? (a strong telescope) What does the Moon orbit? (the Earth)

Diversity

Challenge

• Ask pupils thought-provoking questions: Do you understand what the text is about? Do you need to understand all the words to do this? Are there any new words in the text? Can you work out what they mean from the sentence they are in? If not, where can you find their meanings?

Support

• Tell pupils not to worry about understanding all the words in a text if they can understand the general idea. But remind them to learn key words. Ask pupils to write the words in bold in the text in their notebooks. Write definitions or translations on the board for pupils to copy.

Check Match the questions with the answers.

• 🗐 👺 Pupils work individually to complete the activity. They then compare answers in pairs. Ask for feedback from pairs using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in groups of four. Hand a sheet of A4 paper to each group. They write three more questions and answers to match, based on the text. Make sure they mix up the order of the answers. They swap work with another group and complete each other's activities.

Extra activity TPR

• 🗐 Using their Yes/No response cards, pupils answer these questions and others you might want to add.

Is Mars a rocky planet?

Is the Moon a planet?

Is there another planet outside our solar system?

Does the Earth orbit the Moon?

Are you interested in planets?

Do you know the names of all the planets?

Do you want to find out more about planets?

Do you want to be an astronaut?

Extra activity Fast finishers

· Have pupils find the space words in the text and write them in their notebooks.

- Pupils work in pairs. Pupil A looks at Activity 3 and asks a question. Pupil B closes his/her book and tries to remember the answer. Pupils then swap roles.
- Summative questions technique, ask What new information did you learn in this lesson?

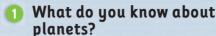
Lesson 3



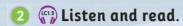
Are all the planets rocky?

surface





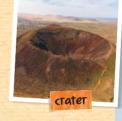




Are all the planets rocky?

Not all of the eight planets in our solar system are **rocky**. Only four planets are made of rocks. They are the planets nearest to the Sun: Mercury, Venus, Earth and Mars. These four planets have got a hard, rocky **surface**, and their **core** is mostly made of **metal**. Space scientists know there are volcanoes, valleys and **craters** on the surface of the rocky planets. They also know that Mars has a very high mountain. Scientists found out that there is another rocky planet outside our solar system. They saw it with a strong telescope in space. Perhaps there are more rocky planets in other solar systems, too.

And what's the Moon like? The Moon is rocky, but it isn't a planet. This is because the Moon doesn't go around the Sun; the Moon goes around the Earth.



gas

соте



TOCK



check

Match the questions with the answers.

- 1 Are all the planets in our solar system rocky? d
- 2 What's the surface of the rocky planets like? e
- 3 What's made of metal? a
- **4** What do space scientists know? **b**
- 5 What's the Moon like? c

- a The core of the rocky planets.
- **b** There's another rocky planet outside our solar system.
- c It's rocky but it isn't a planet.
- **d** No, only Mercury, Venus, Earth and Mars.
- e It's hard with volcanoes, valleys and craters.



34 thirty-four

- Lesson aims: to learn about the other four planets in our solar
- Target language: Mercury, Venus, Earth, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune
- Skills: Reading, Writing

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group of pupils
- glue, scissors

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand simple details in short fact files containing some unfamiliar language, if supported by pictures (GSE 38). Can extract specific information (e.g. facts and numbers) from simple informational texts related to everyday life (e.g. posters, leaflets) (GSE 34).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32). Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33).

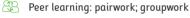
Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

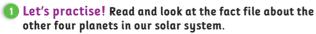
- Write Rocky planets on the board. Ask pupils to raise their hands and name them in order from the Sun outwards.
- Draw a diagram of the Sun and these planets on the board: Sun, Mercury, Venus, Earth and Mars.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about the other planets in our solar system. They will also make a fact file about the rocky planets.
- Pre-teach the names of the other four planets: Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune. Write the names on the board. Ask different pupils to draw the planets and add the names to the diagram on the board. Leave this diagram on the board.
- Extension Internet search key words: image of our solar system

Practice

Pupil's Book



· Refer pupils to page 35. Read the question. Give pupils one minute to read the fact file.

What do you know about the four planets in the fact file? Read and answer.

- Republis work in pairs to read and answer the guestions.
- Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Diversity

Challenge

- Ask pupils to answer the questions in Activity 2 with full sentences. Support
- Write the answers to the questions in Activity 2 on the board.

Show what you know

Make a fact file about the rocky planets

- Place pupils in groups to complete the activity. Hand each group a sheet of A4 paper, scissors and glue.
- Display the fact files on the classroom wall. Ask pupils to read each other's work and vote for their favourite one.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils read a fact file from another group and write questions like those in Activity 2 for the fact file. They hand the questions to another group to answer.

Extra activity TPR

· Call out the names of the planets. Pupils show fists for a rocky planet or spread their hands wide for a giant planet.

Extra activity Fast finishers

· Have pupils write in their notebooks three things they learnt that they didn't know before these lessons.

Finishing the lesson

- Erase the names of the planets from the diagram on the board. Pupils work in pairs. Give them one minute to write down all the planets in our solar system. Ask different pupils to label the diagram again.
- Summative questions technique, ask Did you remember all the planets? Can you spell them?

Extra activity Progress path

Teacher's Book pages 148 (Pupil's Book) and 149 (Activity Book)

- Pupils work in pairs through the questions from the Welcome Unit to Unit 2 in the Pupil's Book (page 68) and/or the Activity Book (page 66).
- Depending on the amount of time you have, pupils could work through the Progress paths for both Pupil's Book and Activity Book unit-by-unit in class, or do the Pupil's Book one in class and the Activity Book one for homework.

Pupil's Book answer key Welcome Unit: pupils' own answers; Unit 1: pupils' own answers; Unit 2: pupils' own answers

Activity Book answer key Welcome Unit: pupils' own answers; Unit 1: pupils' own answers; make a pizza, fix toys, bake a cake, throw a ball; Unit 2: telephone; lemonade

Let's practise!

Read and look at the fact file about the other four planets in our solar system.

Gas giants



Names of planets: Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus and Neptune

Also called: Gas giants

(Uranus and Neptune sometimes called 'Ice giants')

Made of: gas and ice

Surface: not hard

Core: mostly small and rocky

Compare with rocky planets: bigger, further from the Sun, take longer to go round the Sun

- What do you know about the four planets in the fact file? Read and answer.
 - 1 What are the names of the four planets?

2 Why are they called 'Ice giants'?

3 What is the surface of the planets like?

4 What is the core of the planets like?

5 Which planets are bigger, the rocky planets or the ice and gas giants?
The ice and gas giants: Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, Neptune



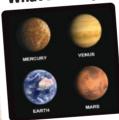


Make a fact file about the rocky planets

- 1 Work in a group. Brainstorm words about the rocky planets from this unit.
- 2 Write three questions about the rocky planets and answer them.
- 3 Choose images from the Internet to print and stick in your fact file.
- 4 Show your fact file to another group.

The rocky planets

What are the rocky planets? What are they like?



thirty-five

Mapping

Topics

Theme 4: Science and technology

Theme 5: Welfare

Scope and Sequence Matrix

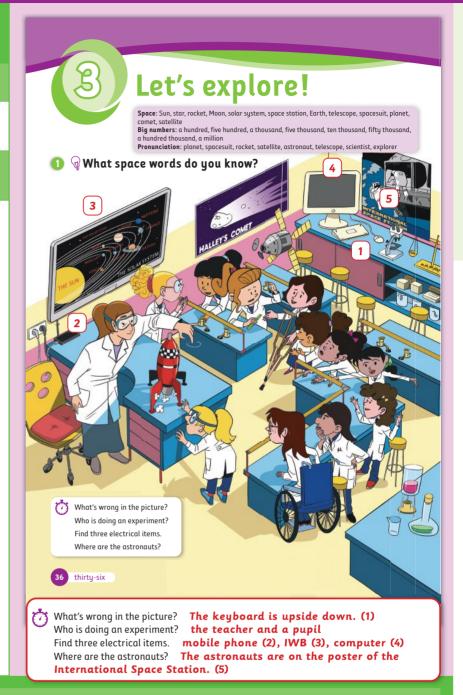
Listening: understanding the main idea and specific details in oral texts describing people, places, and events; taking simple notes while listening; identifying one or more key ideas in an oral presentation or conversation; identifying the topic and setting of oral texts as well as participants and their roles; asking and answering questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something; developing critical listening behaviour

Speaking: speaking for up to two minutes (about an activity, a hobby, etc.) using different structures; taking turns in pair or group discussions; following rules for discussions (e.g. speaking one at a time about the topics under discussion)

Reading: reading and understanding short, simple stories and comic strips involving familiar, concrete situations written in a high-frequency everyday language; expressing, and justifying, opinions on characters and events; skimming and scanning a text for main ideas and key details, graphing them

Writing: independently writing short texts (letters, memos, reminders, stories) using adequate spelling, punctuation, grammar, and organisation

Viewing and presenting: viewing visual information and showing understanding by asking relevant questions; responding to a variety of oral presentations; rehearsing and delivering (individually or collaboratively) a visual presentation on familiar topics



Learning Outcomes and Performance Indicators

Listening: identify the main ideas and specific details in oral descriptions of people, places, and events; respond to questions before, during and after listening; respond to oral presentations, instructions or conversations through questions or statements; extract information from an oral text to do a task; identify the topic of oral texts; identify the setting, participants and plot of a short oral story; begin to make inferences when listening; use clues to understand new or unfamiliar words when listening (context, illustrations, visual elements); ask and answer questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something

Speaking: speak intelligibly while making statements, asking questions, giving instructions and reporting events; take longer turns in pair and group work; produce two- and three-syllable words with the correct stress

Reading: identify a range of punctuation marks for expression and meaning; distinguish facts from opinions; distinguish the (expository) type of the text (cause/effect, comparison, problem/solution, chronology); determine key points in a text and whether or not they concur on it; use various text features (captions, subheadings) to locate key facts or information in a text; skim and scan a text for main ideas and key details; identify the topic, main ideas(s), and key facts in a reading text; explain how specific images or illustrations clarify and contribute to a text

Writing: use correct sentence grammar, punctuation, and capitalisation; write texts using a range of sentence connectives; revise a composition based on peer feedback

Viewing and presenting: start to demonstrate understanding of visual information by asking relevant questions; interpret visual cues in order to analyse and make inferences about the intention of the message; discuss his/her own feelings in response to visual messages; reflect on why others may perceive the images differently

Unit objectives

to talk about space and use big numbers (100-1,000,000)

Language

Vocabulary	Space Sun, star, rocket, Moon, solar system, space station, Earth, telescope, spacesuit, planet, comet, satellite Numbers a hundred, five hundred, a thousand, five thousand, ten thousand, fifty thousand, a hundred thousand, a million	
Grammar	will/won't How?	
Functions	Giving personal information; I'm interested in joining (the Space Explorers Club)	
Pronunciation	Syllable stress with two and three syllable words: planet, spacesuit, rocket, satellite, astronaut, telescope, scientist, explorer	

Key competences

Linguistic competence: use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–14)

Mathematical, science and technological competences: order pictures to complete a task (L. 4); learn big numbers (L. 7); order numbers (L. 8)

Digital competence: use Pupil's Book eBook (L. 1–14)

Social and civic competences: learn to be creative (L. 3); learn to give personal information (L. 10)

Cultural awareness and expression: raise awareness of cultural similarities and differences (L. 9)

Learning to learn: reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–14); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–14); personalisation of language learnt (L. 5 and 9)

Initiative and entrepreneurship: choose a topic for the project (L. 9)

21st Century Skills for Learning and Innovation

•	
Critical thinking	Predicting (L. 11); Problem solving (L. 3); Logical thinking (L. 1, 3 and 9); Finding information (L. 1, 3, 4, 5, 10, 11 and 12); Planning (L. 12); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–14)
Creativity	Design a bed for an astronaut (L. 3)
Communication	Describing space words (L. 1); Making plans (L. 5 and 6); Using big numbers (L. 7 and 8); Talking about ancient places (L. 9); Functional dialogue (L. 12); Challenge game (L. 13)
Collaboration	Project groupwork (L. 9); Acting out (L. 3)

Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Pupil's Book p. 46; Activity Book p. 40
- Unit 3 Extra practice: Activity Book pp. 41 and 42
- Unit 3 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, English in action, CLIL
- Unit 3 Test

External exams

Pupil's Book	Activity Book
A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2	A1 Movers Speaking Part 2
A1 Movers Speaking Part 4	A1 Movers Speaking Part 3

- Lesson aims: to learn and use space vocabulary
- Target language: Sun, star, rocket, Moon, solar system, space station, Earth, telescope, spacesuit, planet, comet, satellite
- Skills: Listenina, Writina, Speakina

Materials

- stopwatch
- Resource 3 A

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Listening: Can recognise familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions (e.g. of objects, people or animals), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 24).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- **Speaking:** Can repeat single words, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 18). Can describe common everyday objects using simple language (GSE 31).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Starting the lesson

Write day and night on the board. Above day draw the Sun and above night the Moon. Ask Do you know what these are? What words am I looking for? Write Sun and Moon above the drawings, read the words and pupils repeat. Ask pupils to predict what this unit is going to be about.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to talk about space. Explain the meaning of space if necessary.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🗑 What space words do you know?

- Refer pupils to page 36. Give pupils an example I know the word Sun. I can see the Sun in the picture. Hold up your book and show pupils the Sun in the picture. Pupils do the activity in pairs.
- 🕽 Using the Lollipop stick technique, ask pupils to find space words they know.
- O Place pupils in the same pairs. Pick up the stopwatch and explain that they have one minute to answer the questions together.
- · Check answers as a class.
- Extension Ask pupils to look at page 36 and describe the picture in pairs, telling each other where the people are, what they are doing, and naming any objects or people they know, e.g. keyboard, pupils.

2 🞧 3.1 Listen, point and repeat.

• Refer pupils to page 37. Tell pupils to find the Sun and Moon. Tell pupils to look at the photos 1–12 and teach/explain the new vocabulary. Prompt with questions, e.q. Can you see Earth? Is Earth a star or a planet? Is the Sun or the Moon at the centre of the



- solar system? What can you look at through a telescope? Has a comet got a tail? Look at pictures 9 to 12. Are they made by people? Which other object is made by people?
- Play the audio.
- Have pupils say a word to their partner for their partner to point to the correct picture. Then they swap.

\int Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 36. Write the missing word.

• \bigcirc Pupils work in pairs to find the space words and write the missing word. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Divide the class into four groups. Assign three words from Activity 2 to each group. Pupils look up definitions of their three space words in an English learner's dictionary (online if available). They read out their words and definitions to the class.

🛂 🗑 Write the words in the table in your notebook. How many words can go into each group?

- · Pupils write the table headings in their notebooks and complete each column with their ideas.
- · Ask pupils to write the words in columns on the board to check their ideas.
- **Extension** Internet search key words: space for kids, NASA kids, planets for kids

Extra activity TPR

• Assign a group from Activity 4 to three different corners of the room. Read out the words from Activity 2 and have pupils point to the correct corner or corners.

🦺 💭 Play a guessing game.

• Place pupils in different pairs for this activity.

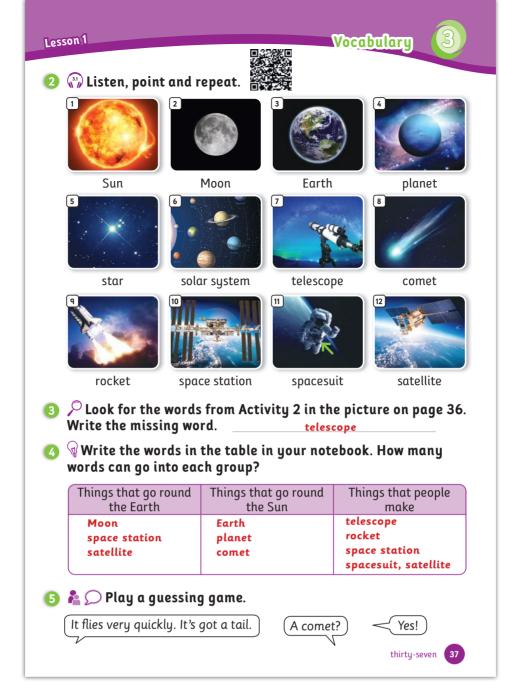
Diversity

Challenge

• Pupils prepare the game alone. Give them one minute to think of words they can use for each space word.

• Prepare the quessing game as a class. Call out these words and ask pupils to say which space words they are connected with: wear, fly, burn, scientists, astronaut, live, travel, fast, tail, hot, cold, study, look at.

- Choose four to six space vocabulary words. With the class, think of a mime for each word.
- Ask the class to walk around the room. Call out a word. Pupils do the
- · Clap your hands as a signal for pupils to walk again and listen to the next word.



Lesson 2 Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use space vocabulary
- Target language: Sun, star, rocket, Moon, solar system, space station, Earth, telescope, spacesuit, planet, comet, satellite
- Skills: Writing

Materials

• 10-16 blank cards for each pupil for the I'm learning game

Global Scale of English (GSE)

• Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

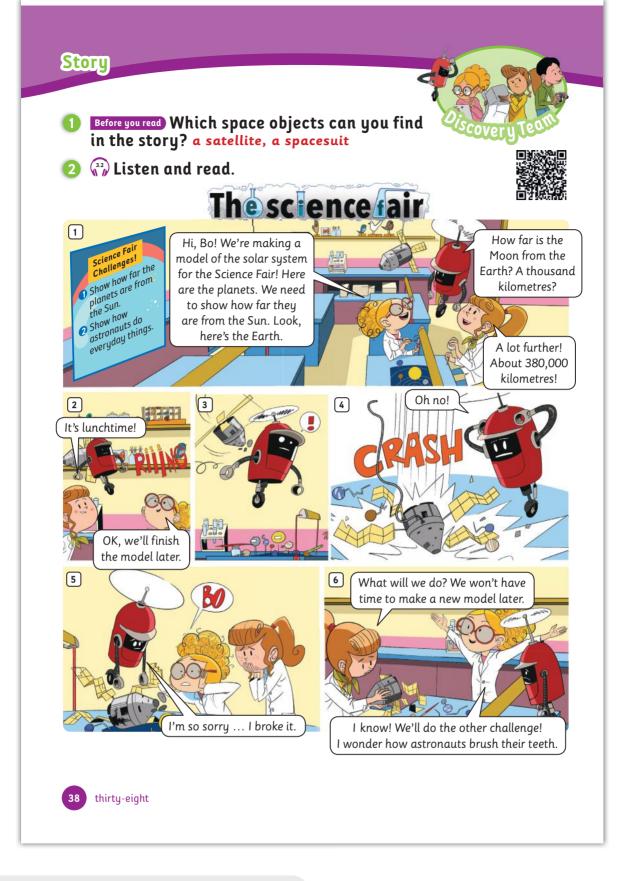
Starting the lesson

- Write some space vocabulary on the board.
- Describe one item using the language from the previous lesson.
- Pupils guess the right item from the description.
- If you have time, pupils can continue with descriptions and their classmates quess.

Practice

- 🚺 Ö Look at Pupil's Book page 36 and complete the
 - A Have pupils check their answers with their partners. Answer key 1 experiment, 2 rocket
- Look and number.
 - · Pupils complete the activity individually.
 - Pupils work in groups to prepare and play the game in the I'm learning box.

Answer key telescope 7, space station 9, solar system 6, spacesuit 10, Moon 2, comet 12, satellite 11, star 5, planet 4, Earth 3, rocket 8

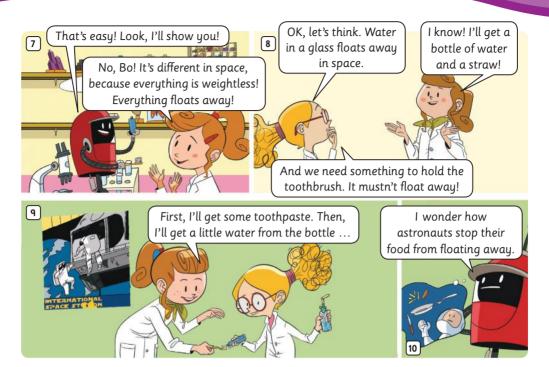


Extra activity Fast finishers

 Have pupils write down the new words with drawings or definitions in their notebooks.

- Æ Pupils work in pairs. Pupil A looks at Activity 2. Pupil B tries to recite the words by heart. Pupil A helps by prompting with the first letter. Pupils swap roles.
- · Ask How many words did you remember?

Lesson 3



- 🔞 F How do astronauts stop their food from floating away? Go to page 66. They tape it down and hold it down with strips.
- After you read Correct the false sentences.
 - 1 There are three challenges for the Science Fair.

There are two challenges for the Science Fair.

- 2 The children are making a model of the Moon.
- 3 The Moon is about a thousand kilometres from the Earth.
- 4 Brushing your teeth in space to the same as brushing your teeth
- on Earth.

 a bottle of water and a straw

 The children use a bottle of water to stop the toothbrush from floating away.
- 6 The children don't work hard for the Science Fair.
- Act out the story.
- 👩 🌟 In space, how do you sleep? Design a bed for an astronaut and share.

thirty-nine 39

- Lesson aims: to listen to a story
- Target language: revision of space vocabulary; weightless
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- a ball
- a ball (that floats, e.g. ping pong ball), a glass of water
- True/False response cards
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- Resource 8

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32). Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can name everyday objects, animals or people around them or in pictures using single words (GSE 23). Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Monitoring pupils' learning: Basketball technique; Happy/Sad face technique; True/False response cards



Peer learning: groupwork; pairwork; acting out

Starting the lesson

Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils to say one space word each from Lesson 1.

Presentation

• Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to a story.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 Before you read Which space objects can you find in the story?

• Refer pupils to pages 38 and 39.

Diversity

Challenge

- · Pupils look up the names of all the planets in the solar system. Support
- · Pupils find the planets in the text and write the words in their notebooks.

🔼 🎧 3.2 Listen and read.

· Introduce weightless and float with a glass of water and a ball. Place the ball in the glass of water and say Look. The ball floats. Then ask Do things float in space? and elicit yes. Explain They float because they are weightless.



- · Play the audio.
- Check comprehension. Ask What is the model for? (the Science Fair) What does Bo do? (breaks the model)

📵 Go to page 66.

- & Pupils discuss in pairs.
- 🗐 Using the Happy/Sad face technique, ask Did you work out

After you read Correct the false sentences.

• Pupils work individually to complete the activity. Ask for answers using the Basketball technique.

6 Act out the story.

- 👔 Divide pupils into groups of three. Allocate a role to each pupil (Katy, Millie and Bo).
- · Pupils act out the story in groups.

👩 🌟 In space, how do you sleep? Design a bed for an astronaut and share.

- Give pupils sheets of paper for their designs.
- Extension Internet search key words: NASA sleeping in space

Extra activity Critical thinking

• The class brainstorm other objects that astronauts use in space and suggest how they stop them floating away.

Extra activity TPR

• 🥽 Using the True/False response cards technique, pupils respond to true and false statements you make about the story.

Finishing the lesson

Ask pupils what their favourite part of the story was.

Lesson 4 **Activity Book**

Objectives

- · Lesson aims: to review a story
- Target language: revision of space vocabulary; weightless
- Skills: Reading, Writing

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

How to work with stories

Stage 1 - Before listening to the story

First, talk to pupils about the characters appearing in the story and about the places in which they appear. Ask pupils what they can see in the pictures and invite them to guess what will happen in the story. Remember to praise pupils for all their ideas, but do not correct them and do not explain too much. (In a moment pupils will listen to the recording and check if they were right). Focus more on what occurred in the story than on the language itself. First, pupils will understand the story as a whole, then they will remember the vocabulary used in the story.

Stage 2 - Listening to the story

At this stage remember to encourage pupils to compare their previous ideas with what actually happened in the story. Play the recorded story and ask pupils to point to the appropriate pictures in the Pupil's Book.

Stage 3 - After listening to the story

After listening to the story together, ask pupils a few questions about it to make sure that they understood what happened. When answering, pupils additionally practise and consolidate the previously introduced language material.

Stage 4 - Acting out

After having listened to the story a few times, your pupils should be ready to act it out. Pupils can contribute to the story, first by making particular gestures and then, depending on the difficulty of the text, by using simple phrases. You may also play particular parts of the recording and ask pupils to repeat them each time.

Next, you may divide pupils into groups and ask each of them to say the lines of one character. Under the teacher's supervision and on the basis of the pictures, pupils quote the lines of appropriate characters. To make this exercise more interesting, you can bring items to be used as props.

Suggested exercises

- Ask pupils to draw a scene from the story they have heard.
- Ask pupils to invent another ending for the story they have heard.
- Pupils draw their favourite character.
- Talk to pupils about what the characters learnt.
- Ask pupils about the way they would behave or feel if they were one of the characters.
- Read some lines from the story. Pupils should provide the name of the character who says the lines.

Starting the lesson

• Use the Lollipop stick technique to ask pupils what happened in the story from the previous lesson. Replay the audio if you have time.

Practice

After you read Read and circle. Then order the pictures.

· Give pupils one minute to complete the activity.

Answer key b Bo, c teeth, d food Correct order: 3, 2, 4, 1

Read and answer the questions.

· Pupils complete the activity individually.

Answer key 2 Katy suggests trying a different challenge.; 3 In space everything is weightless.; 4 The children use a bottle of water and a straw.

Values Read and tick (). What should you do to be a good citizen in school?

• & Pupils choose and then compare answers with a partner.

Answer key 1 V, 2 V

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils find words connected to space in the story on the Pupil's Book pages and write them in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they learnt about the solar system and gravity from the story.

CLIL Link

In Unit 3, the story is based around the solar system and the concept of gravity from the Science curriculum.

Millie and Katy are making a model of the solar system for the Science, but Bo breaks it and they have to rethink what to do. Finally, they decide to present a poster about how astronauts stop things from floating away while they are in space, in zero gravity.

To explore the concept of gravity further, you can use Resource $8. \,$

- Lesson aims: to learn and use will/won't
- Target language: I'll (get him a present). I won't (get him a book).
- Skills: Speaking, Listening

Materials

- Yes/No response cards
- Resource 12 A

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Speaking:** Can talk about plans for the near future in a simple way (GSE 38).
- Listening: Can identify specific information in short, simple dialogues in which speakers make arrangements to do something, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 36). Can identify key information about future plans in short, simple dialogues (GSF 35)

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Yes/No response cards technique; Lollipop stick technique



Reer learning: groupwork

Starting the lesson

- Write Science Fair on the board. Ask What did the Discovery Team do for the Science Fair? and elicit answers.
- Ask pupils what they remember from the story from Lesson 3. Prompt with questions What was the model? (the solar system) Who broke the model? (Bo)

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use will and won't to talk about future plans.
- Write tomorrow on the board. Ask questions, pupils answer using their Yes/No response cards: Will you have a sandwich for lunch? Will you do your homework? Will you call your friend?

Practice

Pupil's Book

Cook back! Tick (✔) the sentence in this picture.

• Refer pupils to pages 38-40.

2 🞧 3.3 Listen and repeat.

- · Play the audio.
- Write I'll get up early tomorrow. I won't watch TV this evening. Read out the sentences and have
- · Ask two different pupils to go to the board and underline the words in the sentences that tell them we are talking about a
- · Draw pupils' attention to the abbreviations and the time expressions.

3.4 Listen and say the correct picture.

- · Play the audio.
- Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.



- I'm looking at a comet, but it's getting cold. I think I'll go home soon and have a hot bath!
- 2 Girl: I've got a big project on space this week, and a lot of Maths homework, too! I know! I'll do my Maths homework tomorrow and start my space project on Wednesday.
- 3 Boy: It's my sister's graduation tomorrow! I think I'll make her a big chocolate cake this evening.
- It's going to be sunny this afternoon! I don't think I'll go to the library; I think I'll go swimming.

Diversity

Challenge

- Before listening, ask pupils what they can see in each picture. Support
- Before pupils listen, describe what you can see in each picture in random order for pupils to call out the letter.

🎎 In groups, plan a surprise space party for your friend! What will you do? What won't you do?

- Place pupils into groups of four to complete the activity.
- · Write the following ideas on the board to help pupils plan their parties: tell your friend about the party, bake a rocket cake, go to school, buy drinks, buy a book about space, buy a card, go shopping for party food, read a book, decorate the house with space decorations, invite all your friends, bring your friend to the house, shout 'surprise!' when your friend comes in.

5 澹 Tell another group about your plan.

• 💤 Place groups together. Tell pupils that each pupil should talk about at least one plan. Repeat in new groups.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils repeat Activities 4 and 5, but this time plan what they will do for a school Science Fair and use their own ideas.

Extra activity TPR

• Say sentences with will and won't. Pupils raise their right hand for will and left hand for won't.

Finishing the lesson

- · Write on the board this afternoon.
- Ask the class to close their eyes. Rub out some of the letters.
- Ask the class to open their eyes and tell you which letters are missing. You could ask a pupils to come to the board and complete the phrase.
- Repeat with other time expressions if you have time.

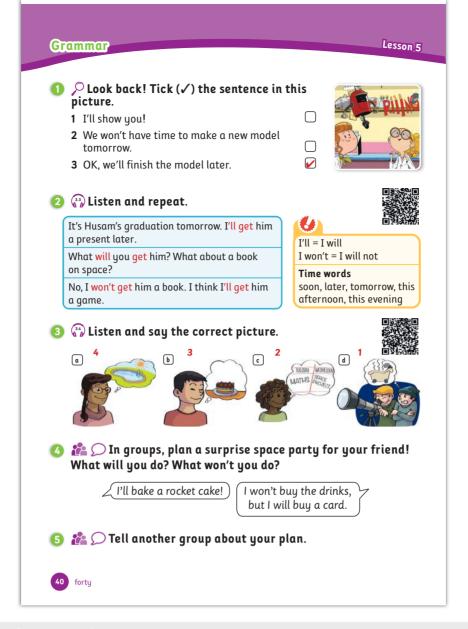
Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use will/won't
- Target language: I'll (get him a present). I won't (get him a book).
- · Skills: Writing, Listening

Global Scale of English (GSE)

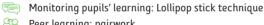
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can identify specific information in short, simple dialogues in which speakers make arrangements to do something, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 36). Can identify key information about future plans in short, simple dialogues (GSE 35).



Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

• Write the time phrases on the board. Ask pupils to say a sentence for each one using will and won't.

Practice





• 🕽 Use the Lollipop stick technique to check answers.

- 1 Girl 1: What will you wear to the party next week, Hala? Girl 2: It's a fancy dress party, so I won't wear my new jeans. But I'll wear my new spacesuit costume. It's cool!
- 2 Girl 3: What will you do this evening, Salwa?
 - Girl 4: Well ... I think I'll study with Sana, but we won't study Maths. We'll study the solar system.
- 3 Boy 1: What will you send to your friend on Monday, Tarea?
 - Boy 2: I think I'll send him an email. I haven't got his address, so I won't send him a letter.
- 4 Boy 3: What will you bake this evening, Raed?

- Boy 4: I think I'll bake a rocket cake with Jamal. We won't bake a star cake this time.
- 5 Boy 5: What will you use in class this afternoon, Sami?
 - Boy 6: Well ... it's the Science week, so I won't use the tablet as usual. I think I'll use the telescope!
- 6 Boy 7: What will you make for your Science project tomorrow, Malek?
 - Boy 8: Well, I haven't got any grey paints, so I won't make a model of the Moon. I think I'll make a really big model of the Sun. I'll send you a picture later!

Answer key 2 a v, b x; 3 a x, b v; 4 a x, b v; 5 a v, b x; 6 a X, b V

2 Look at Activity 1 and complete the sentences.

Answer key 2 will study, won't study; 3 won't send, will send; 4 will bake, won't bake; 5 won't use, will use; 6 won't make, will make

Extra activity Creativity

- Write the following on the board: wear trainers, study English, use the computer, send a letter, bake a cake.
- RP Put pupils in pairs and have them ask questions using Will you ...? and the phrases on the board about tomorrow.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils write down four personal plans for tomorrow.

Finishing the lesson

• Summative questions technique, ask How do we usually say 'I will' and 'I will not'?

Vocabulary and Grammar

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use big numbers; to learn and use How; to learn and sing a song
- Target language: a hundred, five hundred, a thousand, five thousand, ten thousand, fifty thousand, a hundred thousand, a million; How deep is the Grand Canyon?
- Skills: Listening, Speaking

Materials

- 16 cards with words and numbers written on each one: a hundred, five hundred, a thousand, five thousand, ten thousand, fifty thousand, a hundred thousand, a million, 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 50,000, 100,000, 1,000,000
- Resources 3 B, 12 B, 16, 20

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Listening: Can identify numbers relating to height, weight, length, etc. in simple descriptions of objects, animals or buildings, if guided by questions (GSE 35).
- Speaking: Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18). Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Basketball technique



Peer learning: pairwork



Starting the lesson

Ask Can you count to a hundred? Have pupils count to a hundred around the class, saying one number each.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn big numbers and they will learn to ask questions with How. They will also sing a song.
- Write these numbers on the board in figures and check that pupils know them in L1. If necessary, spend time familiarising pupils with the numbers: 100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 50,000, 100,000, 1,000,000

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🎧 3.6 Listen, point and repeat.

- Refer pupils to page 41.
- · Play the audio.
- **Extension** Using the Basketball technique, have pupils say the numbers 1-8 in Activity 1.



Diversity

Challenge

• Do a numbers dictation after pupils listen and repeat. Read out the numbers in random order and have pupils write.

Support

• Do a numbers dictation after pupils listen and repeat. Read out the numbers in numerical order and have pupils write.

Extra activity Collaborative work

• & Hand out one word or number card each to sixteen different pupils. Pupils have to find the pupil with the word card that matches the number. Repeat with different pupils.

2 3.7 & 3.8 Listen and sing.

- · Play the song and tell pupils to listen only this time.
- Read out the song one line at a time and have
- · Play the song again and encourage pupils to join in
- 3.8 Play the karaoke version of the song and encourage pupils to sing.

Extra activity TPR

- · Demonstrate these actions from the song. How tall: place both hands on your head How high: stretch both hands high above your head How deep: stretch both hands to the floor How long: stretch both hands wide How far: mime with both hands that you are looking through a telescone
- Play the song for pupils to do the actions while they listen.

3.9 Listen and repeat.

· Play the audio. Pupils listen and repeat.



3.10 Listen and repeat.

· Play the audio. Pupils listen and repeat.



🟮 🦺 💭 Say a number. Your partner points to the number.

- A Place pupils in pairs for this activity. Monitor.
- 🜀 Ŋ Pupil A: Activity Book, page 61.
 - Pupil B: Activity Book, page 63.
 - R Place pupils in pairs for this activity. Monitor.

Finishing the lesson

Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they think about what they learnt today

Lesson 8 **Activity Book**

Objectives

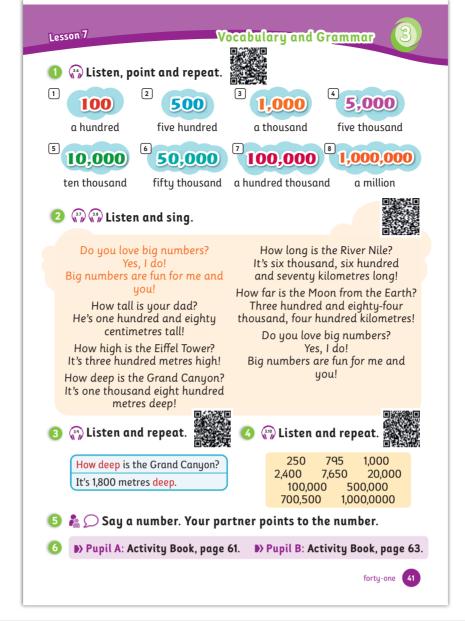
- Lesson aims: to learn and use big numbers; to learn and use How
- Target language: a hundred, five hundred, a thousand, five thousand, ten thousand, fifty thousand, a hundred thousand, a million; How deep is the Grand Canyon?
- Skills: Listening, Writing

Materials

• sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil

Global Scale of English (GSE)

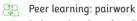
- Listening: Can identify numbers relating to height, weight, length, etc. in simple descriptions of objects, animals or buildings, if guided by questions (GSE 35).
- Writing: Can complete a table or form with specific information extracted from a short, simple written text on a familiar topic (GSE 37). Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).



Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Give each pupils a sheet of paper. Ask them to write a big number on it
- Ask pupils to walk around the room holding up their numbers. When you clap your hands, they stop and turn to the pupils nearest to them.
 They read out each other's numbers.

Practice



Answer key fifty thousand – 50,000 (3); a hundred – 100 (8); a thousand – 1,000 (6); five thousand – 5,000 (5); ten thousand – 10,000 (4); five hundred – 500 (7); a hundred thousand – 100,000 (2)

- 2 🕠 3.11 Complete the questions and circle the answers. Then listen and check.
 - Revise the adjectives. Write high, deep, far, wide and tall on the board. Say these words and have pupils call out the correct adjectives: man, mountain, river, the Sun from the Earth, the sea.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually.
 - Play the audio.

- 1 Boy 1: How far is it from Amman to Aqaba by car?
 - Boy 2: It's about 332 kilometres.
- 2 Girl 1: How tall is this basketball player?
 - Girl 2: He's 213 centimetres tall.
- 3 Boy 1: How high is Mount Everest?
- **Boy 2**: It's 8,848 metres high.
- 4 Girl 1: How deep is the Pacific Ocean at its deepest point?
 - Girl 2: It's about 10,911 metres deep.
- **5 Boy 1:** How wide is the Earth?
 - Boy 2: It's about 12,750,000 metres wide.

Answer key 1 far, 332; 2 tall, 213; 3 high, 8,848; 4 deep, 10,911; 5 wide, 12,750,000

• Extension Put pupils in pairs and explain that they are going to play a game. They take turns to ask each other the questions in Activity 2 to see if they can remember the answers.

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils copy the numbers and words from Pupil's Book Activities 1 and 4 into their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

 Using the Summative questions technique, ask Can you count to 100/1,000/10,000/100,000/ 1,000,000? Can you write the numbers in words? Is it easy or hard to count in a different language? Why?

- Lesson aims: to learn about the history of stone circles in the UK
- Target language: revision of vocabulary
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- a picture of Stonehenge
- history books about your country
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group of pupils
- coloured pencils, a hole punch
- a folder to use for the class book
- modelling clay, stones or cork
- True/False response cards

Global Scale of English (GSE)

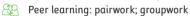
- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39).
- Writing: Can write a short, simple guide to their town/city with appropriate sub-headings, given a model (GSE 47).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- **Speaking:** Can describe common everyday objects using simple language (GSE 31).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique; True/ False response cards technique



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Write history on the board. Ask What do we learn about in history? and elicit answers.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will talk about the history of stone
- Show a picture of Stonehenge. Ask pupils to raise their hands if they have seen this place before.

Culture notes

- Castlerigg stone circle is in Cumbria, north-west England. The tallest stone is 2.3 metres high and the heaviest stone weighs
- Stonehenge is in Wiltshire, south England. Each stone is about 4 metres high and weighs about 25 tons.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Before you read Where can you see stone circles?

· Write stone circles on the board. Ask pupils if they know or can quess what these are.

- Refer pupils to page 42 and read the question. Pupils discuss in pairs for one minute. Then ask for class feedback.
- Tell pupils to look at the photos. Ask What can you see? Are these stones old or new? and elicit answers.

3.12 Listen and read.

- Play the text all the way through.
- · Check comprehension with questions. Ask How old is Castlerigg stone circle? (5,000 years) How far away is Wales from Stonehenge? (240 kilometres) Do we know what the circles were for? (no)
- Extension & Pupils discuss the final question in pairs.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in pairs and write three sentences about the text: two true and one false. They read them to another pair who use their True/False response cards to say which ones are true and which is false.

3 After you read Activity Book, page 36.

- Write calendar and measure on the board and explain their meanings if necessary.
- Pupils turn to page 36 in their Activity Books and complete the

💭 Are there any stone circles or other ancient places in your country?

- · Encourage class feedback and discussion.
- Extension Internet search key words: stone circles in [your country], ancient places in [your country]

Diversity

Challenge

• Pupils find out about stone circles or other ancient places and they write four interesting facts and tell the class.

• Pupils find out about stone circles on the Internet or in books. Place bookmarks in the books to show pupils where to look. Or give pupils key words to use in an Internet search. Ask pupils to write down two facts and tell the class.

Project

Make a class book about ancient places in your country.



- A Divide pupils into groups of four. Give each group a sheet of A4 paper and coloured pencils.
- · Help pupils find information about one ancient place each. Decide on the different places before pupils start.
- Explain that pupils should draw a picture and write a paragraph like the text in the Pupil's Book.
- 🕮 Each group presents their place to the class. Make sure each pupil from each group reads out some information.
- File pupils' work together in the folder to make a class book. Have a class vote for the favourite projects.

Extra activity TPR

• Say big numbers to the class. For numbers below 1,000, pupils squat down. For numbers between 1,000 and 10,000, they stand up. For numbers over 10,000, they jump.



Activity Book

- Look and tick (
) the correct picture.
 - Pupils work individually and check with a partner.

 Answer key 2 b, 3 b, 4 a, 5 a
- 2 After you read Read and circle the correct answer.
 - Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

 Answer key 2 6,000, 3 world, 4 north, 5 240, 6 markets

Extra activity Creativity

• Put pupils in groups. Ask them create their own stone circle on a piece of cardboard. They can use small stones, modelling clay or cork. Ask them to write the answers to the following questions about their stone circle: Where is it? How old is it? How wide is it? What do you use it for? Monitor and help. Groups present their stone circles to the class.

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils find all the big numbers in the Pupil's Book and Activity Book in this lesson. They write them as words.

Finishing the lesson

• Summative questions technique, ask What facts were the most interesting for you? Why?

Englishinaction

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn to give personal information; to learn and practise syllable stress with two and three syllable words
- Target language: I'm interested (in joining the Space Explorers
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- Yes/No response cards
- a ball
- Resource 24

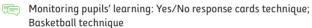
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can extract specific information (e.g. facts and numbers) from simple informational texts related to everyday life (e.g. posters, leaflets) (GSE 34). Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).
- Listening: Can identify basic factual information in short, simple dialogues or stories on familiar everyday topics, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 34).
- Speaking: Can express likes and dislikes in relation to familiar topics in a basic way (GSE 29).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique

Starting the lesson

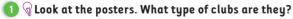
Ask pupils questions for them to respond with their Yes/No response cards. Ask Do you like clubs? Are you a member of any clubs? Would you like to join a space club?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to give personal information.
- Ask What kind of information do you have to give when you join a club? Pupils discuss in groups for one minute.

Practice

Pupil's Book



- Refer pupils to page 43. Pupils discuss in groups of three or four and then raise their hands to offer answers.
- Extension Ask pupils comprehension questions about the posters: When does the club meet? What time? What can you do at this club?

2 🎧 3.13 Listen. What type of club does Mariam want to join?

· Play the audio. Pupils raise their hands to offer answers. Do not confirm any answers yet.



3.14 Listen, read and check.

- · Play the audio again for pupils to listen and read. Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the Say it! box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class

Extra activity Collaborative work

• Divide the class into two groups. One group is Mariam; the other is Laila. Play the audio and pause after each sentence. Pupils from each group repeat what they hear.

4 💭 Choose a club to join!

• Place pupils in pairs and assign Pupil A and Pupil B. Pupil A wants to join a club and gives information and Pupil B asks for information. Then pupils swap roles. Tell pupils to use the dialogue in Activity 3 as a model.

Diversity

Challenge

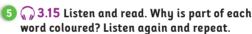
• 🕮 Have pupils perform their dialogues to the class.

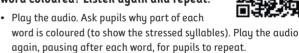
• B Give pupils one minute to prepare their personal information before talking in pairs.

Extra activity TPR

• Assign the numbers 1–9 to all pupils in the class. Tell pupils that they stand up when they hear their number. But when you say 0 or double 0, all pupils must stand up: 1287 445006, 1976 032001, 9876 001234.

Pronunciation





Activity Book

Order the words to make sentences.

· Ask different pupils to read out their sentences.

Answer key 3 How do you spell your last name?; 5 What's your date of birth?; 7 What's your home phone number?

2 3.16 Listen and complete the conversation in Activity 1.

· Play the audio.



Girl 1: Hi! I'm interested in joining the Science Club.

Girl 2: What's your name?

Girl 1: Alia Asmar.

Girl 2: How do you spell your last name?

Girl 1: A-S-M-A-R.

Girl 2: What's your date of birth?

Girl 1: The fifteenth of January 2008.

Girl 2: What's your home phone number?

Girl 1: 4766 032821.

Girl 2: Thanks very much. Welcome to the Science Club!

Answer key 2 Alia Asmar. 4 A-S-M-A-R. 6 The fifteenth of January 2008. 8 4766 032821.

Lesson 10

Look at the posters. What type of clubs are they? Space Club and Science

Listen. What type of club does Mariam want to join?the Space Explorers

🗿 😘 Listen, read and

Hello! I'm Mariam. I'm interested in joining the Space Explorers Club.

Mariam Rahhal.

R-A-H-H-A-L.

23/2/13 - that's the 23rd February, 2013.

1287 445006

English in action Giving personal information



Hi, Mariam! I'm Laila. OK, what's your name?

How do you spell your last name?

Thanks. What's your date of birth?

OK. What's your home phone number?

Thanks. Welcome to the club!

Choose a club to join!

Gardening Club Maths Club Science Club **Gymnastics Club**



I'm interested in joining ... How do you spell your last name? What's your date of birth? What's your home phone number? 1287 445006 = one two eight seven double-four five double-oh six

Pronunciation

Listen and read. Why is part of each word coloured? Listen again and repeat.

planet **spacesuit** rocket

astronaut telescope scientist



satellite

explorer

forty-three



- 🗿 🦺 🗰 Now design your own membership club card. In pairs, practise the conversation in Activity 1 using your card. Share.
- 🕠 3.17 Listen and read. Circle the stressed parts of the words. Then practise saying the words with your
 - · Play the audio. Pupils circle the stressed part of each word.
 - & Pupils practise saying the words in pairs. Monitor and

Answer key 1 (ifty, 2 thousand, 3 hundred, 4 twenty, 5 seventeen, 6 thirty, 7 number, 8 membership, 9 circle

Extra activity Fast finishers

· Pupils close their books and write down the questions Fadia asked Alia in Activity 1. They try to remember the answers.

Finishing the lesson

 $\bullet \hspace{0.2cm} \textcircled{\label{eq:constraint} Using the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask} \textit{When might}$ you have to give personal information in English?



- Lesson aims: to read and understand a reading text
- Target language: revision of unit vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20). Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41). Can talk about plans for the near future in a simple way (GSE 38).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



technique

technique Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Two stars and a wish



Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Write satellite and space station on the board. Ask Where are satellites? Who makes them? What do we use them for?
- Ask what they know about the space station. Encourage class discussion with questions, e.g. Where is it? Does anyone live there?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will read a text about the International Space Station.
- Write muscles, spacewalk, orbits and tools on the board. Read them out and have pupils repeat.
- Explain the meanings with sentences. Say the sentences and pause before each word so pupils can say the word:

We have muscles in our bodies. Look, this is an arm ... muscle. You can walk in space. It is a called a ... spacewalk.

A satellite that goes around the Earth ... orbits the Earth. Finally, astronauts use ... tools to do work in space.

Diversity

Challenge

· Ask pupils extra questions: What do astronauts wear for a spacewalk? What do we use muscles for?

• Point to the words on the board as you say the sentences. Speak slowly and clearly. Explain meanings in L1 if necessary.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Before you read What do astronauts do on the **International Space Station?**

• Refer pupils to page 44. Pupils discuss in pairs first. Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils for ideas. Accept all reasonable suggestions.

2 🮧 3.18 Listen and read.

- · Ask pupils to find out if their ideas in Activity 1 were correct. Play the audio.
- · Ask pupils to say which ideas they had also appear in the text.
- · Check comprehension with questions. Ask Does the ISS travel fast or slowly? (fast) Are the astronauts busy? (yes) What do they do when they aren't working? (read and take photos) Why do they exercise? (to keep their muscles strong)

Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils work in pairs and find five words in the text connected to the theme of space and write them in their notebooks. Hand each pair a piece of paper. They write an activity on it with the words in a box and gapped sentences. They swap sentences with another pair and solve their activities.
- Pairs give each other feedback about their activities using the Two stars and a wish technique.

3 After you read Complete the sentences. Write one or two

- · Give pupils a minute to complete the activity individually.
- 🥽 Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.
- Pupils work in small groups and make a quiz about the ISS. They swap quizzes with other groups. They can use information in the text and/or look for information online.
- Extension Internet search key words: NASA ISS

Extra activity TPR

• Tell pupils that they are astronauts and they should mime what you describe. Say:

You put on your spacesuit.

You are floating in space doing a spacewalk.

You are fixing the space station with a toothbrush!

You are taking photos of the Earth.

You are sleeping in a space bed.

You are trying to catch your tools that are floating away!

Activity Book

After you read Look and write.

• B Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. They compare answers with a partner.

Answer key 2 spacewalk, 3 tools, 4 muscles

Read and write True or False.

• Pupils complete the activity individually. They compare answers with a partner before class feedback.

Answer key 2 True, 3 False, 4 True

3 Correct the false sentences in Activity 2.

· Pupils complete the activity individually.

Answer key There are 10 astronauts living on the ISS.

Reading

- Before you read What do astronauts do on the International
 Space Station? They find out about space.
- 2 (3.18) Listen and read.

LIFE ON THE INTERNATIONAL SPACE STATION

The International Space Station (ISS) is a satellite. It orbits the Earth once every 90 minutes, travelling at 28,000 kilometres per hour! But it's different from a normal satellite because about ten astronauts live on it.

The astronauts on the ISS have a lot of jobs to do every day. They do



out more about space. They use special tools to fix the station, and if they need to fix something

outside, they put on their spacesuits and do a spacewalk! When they aren't working, astronauts read and take photos.

There's one more important thing for astronauts to do: exercise! People are weightless

in space, so
their muscles
don't work
hard and
can become
very weak.
Astronauts
need to
exercise for
two hours a day!



- After you read Complete the sentences. Write one or two words.
 - 1 The International Space Station is a <u>satellite</u> with astronauts on it.
 - do experiments
 The astronauts _____ every day to find out more about space.
 - 3 For a spacewalk they need to wear spacesuits.
 - **4 _Exercise** is very important for astronauts because their muscles get weak in space.



forty-four

- Imagine you're a group of astronauts planning a trip to Mars. Decide as a group what nine personal things you want to take with you. All your group's things must fit in a box which is one metre high, wide and deep. Discuss and make a list. Write in your notebook and share with the class.
 - Place pupils in groups to complete the activity.
 - Walk around the class monitoring groups.
 - Ask different groups to talk about their boxes. Ask for class feedback for comparisons.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils write ten favourite words from this lesson in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

 Susing the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask What did you learn today? Do you think you can tell your family about the ISS? What interesting things will you tell them?

- Lesson aims: to understand a listening task; to talk about plans for a trip to the ISS; to write a blog post by an astronaut
- Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- a ball
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can identify the context of a short, simple text related to familiar situations (GSE 33).
- Listening: Can identify specific information in short, simple dialogues, if there is some repetition and rephrasing (GSE 34).
- Speaking: Can give an opinion in a structured discussion, if guided by questions (GSE 46).
- Writing: Can write short, simple personal emails/letters about familiar topics, given prompts (GSE 40).

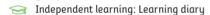
Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique;



Starting the lesson

3.7 Play the song from Lesson 7 and encourage pupils to join in and do the actions they learnt.



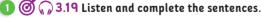
Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to an interview with an astronaut, talk about a plan to go to the ISS and then write a blog post about being an astronaut on the ISS.
- 🗐 Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils to say what they remember about the International Space Station from Lesson 11.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Listening



- Refer pupils to page 45 and tell them to read the sentences in Activity 1 before they listen so they know what to listen for.
- · Play the audio.
- Pupils compare answers with a partner.



Woman 1: Hello, everybody. Today, I am talking to Helen Robertson. She's a British astronaut on the International Space Station! Hello, Helen. Welcome to the programme.

- Woman 2: Hello, Nicole.
- Woman 1: So, Helen, you spent 247 days in space on the International Space Station, right?
- Woman 2: Yes, that's right! I loved living in space. My favourite hobby was looking out of the window! I could see the rivers, the mountains and the oceans on Earth. It was so beautiful! I could also see the Moon, the planets and millions of stars. I didn't need a telescope!
- Woman 1: There's one important question I want to ask you: where did you get your food from? You can't grow food in
- Woman 2: The food came in rockets. Every few months a rocket arrived with fresh food and food in packets for the astronauts.
- Woman 1: Wow! Food by rocket! Amazing! How big is that rocket?
- Woman 2: It isn't very big about seven metres tall. But it's full of food and other interesting things.

Diversity

Challenge

• Play the audio once. Pupils swap books. Play the audio again for pupils to check each other's work.

• Play the audio once. Pupils compare answers with a partner. Play the audio again for pupils to check their work.

Speaking

- 2 Imagine you're an astronaut on the International Space Station. What will you do every day? What won't you do?
 - · Remind pupils to use will for this activity.
 - Pupils work in pairs.
 - After a set amount of time, change pupils' pairs and they repeat the activity.
 - Ask different pupils to talk about their plans. Ask Do you have the same ideas? Ask for class feedback. Prompt with questions: Who had the same idea? What will you do, (name)? Do you think that's a good idea? Why/Why not?

Writing

Read. What is the blog post about?

- Give pupils a minute to read the text and find the answer.
- · Check comprehension with questions. Ask What's the astronaut's name? (Ali) How many meals a day do they have? (three) Why don't they have cakes and biscuits? (Because crumbs are a problem.)

Extra activity TPR

• 🗐 Using the Happy/Sad face technique, pupils respond to your questions: Do you like the blog post? Are you ready to write a blog post? Give more help as necessary.

Imagine you're an astronaut on the International Space Station. Write a blog post.

- · Read the Writing tip to pupils. Tell pupils to find the question in the blog post.
- Read the plan to pupils. Pupils turn to their Activity Books.
- Extension Internet search key words: NASA kids International Space Station

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Hand a sheet of A4 paper to each pupil. Ask them to write a list of food that has crumbs and food that doesn't have crumbs. They then write a three-meal menu for a day on the space station.





Listening



- 1 Helen Robertson is a/an

 British astronaut.
- 2 Helen spent <u>247</u> days on the International Space Station.
- 3 On the ISS, Helen's favourite hobby was looking out of
- the window
 The astronauts got more
 food by <u>rocket</u>
- 5 The rocket was about seven metres tall.

Speaking

Imagine you're an astronaut on the International Space Station. What will you do every day? What won't you do?

I'll get a packet of food ...

I won't forget to exercise ...





Writing

Read. What is the blog post about? What astronauts eat.

Hi, this is Astronaut Ali! My blog post today is about food. What do astronauts eat?

In space, we have three meals a direct like on Earth. But all our food.

In space, we have three meals a day, just like on Earth. But all our food is in bags. You need to add water to some types of food. We have a lot of different types of food, but we don't have food with a lot of crumbs, like biscuits or cakes. If we drop crumbs, they float around, and that's a problem!

tip Writing

Use questions to make your writing more interesting. Can you find the question in Ali's blog post?

Imagine you're an astronaut on the International Space Station. Write a blog post.

Plan 🖳

Choose from these topics: food, clothes, repairs, hobbies. Find out more about these topics on the ISS!

- What do you eat/wear/do?
- How is it different from on Earth?

Write 🖑

Hi, I'm ...

My blog post today is about ...
In space, we ...

Did you know ...?

3 Check your work √

- Used a question?
- Activity Book, page 37.

forty-five



Activity Book

Match the questions with the answers.

Answer key 2 d, 3 c, 4 a

- 2 Imagine you're an astronaut on the International Space Station. Write a blog post.
 - Plan: Give pupils one minute to complete their notes. Monitor and help with ideas.
 - Write: Pupils work individually to complete the report.
 - Check your work: Write the following questions on the board:
 Did you use questions? Did you use paragraphs? Did you use
 linking words? Did you use a capital letter at the start of each
 sentence? Did you use a full stop at the end of each sentence?
 Did you use the correct spellings? Was your writing clear?
 Pupils evaluate their own work by answering the questions.
 - Using the Two stars and a wish technique, pupils read and check each other's work.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils find the space vocabulary in the lesson and write the words in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

• Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary: Today I listened to ..., I described ... and I wrote a description of

Lesson 13

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to review unit language
- Target language: unit vocabulary
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Speaking

Materials

- 16 word/number cards from Lesson 7
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 41).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32). Can complete a table or form with specific information extracted from a short, simple written text on a familiar topic (GSE 37).
- **Speaking:** Can talk about plans for the near future in a simple way (GSE 38). Can ask a range of questions in guessing games to find the answer (GSE 36).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Ask pupils a key question about learning numbers: When will you use numbers in English? Accept all reasonable answers.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will do revision of the unit vocabulary and then play a game.
- · Revise the space vocabulary by writing the target language on the board with the vowels missing.
- Revise the big numbers by writing the figures on the board. Ask different pupils to go up to the board, choose a number and say it in English:

100, 500, 1,000, 5,000, 10,000, 50,000, 100,000, 1,000,000

- Revise will and won't. Using the Lollipop stick technique, ask pupils to say what they will do as an astronaut on the ISS.
- · Revise questions with How. Ask pupils to remember the How questions and answers from the song. They can refer back to Lesson 7 if necessary.

Extra activity TPR

• Place the word and number cards around the room. Call out a number and choose one pupil to find the word and another to find the figure.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Look at the picture. How many space words can you find?

- Refer pupils to page 46. Pupils work in pairs to find the
- 🗐 Using the Lollipop stick technique, pupils say their answers.

🔼 🦺 Work with a partner. In turns, say the numbers.

- Pupils work in the same pairs and complete the activity.
- Ask different pairs to demonstrate one number each.

ᢃ 🧸 💭 You're going into space! What will you take? Tell your partner.

- Pupils work in the same pairs and complete the activity.
- Ask different pupils to say one idea each.

👍 💭 Circle the correct word. Match with the answers. Then ask and answer.

- · Pupils complete the activity individually.
- A Then they read the questions and answers in pairs.

Diversity

Challenge

• Promote class discussion about Activity 3. Ask Who will take the same thing? What else will you take? Why? Who has a different idea?

Support

Pupils can write some ideas down in note form before talking in pairs in Activity 3.

Extra activity Collaborative work

• Divide the class into two groups. Play Hangman with vocabulary from this unit.

Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

- Divide the class into two teams. For large classes, divide the class into groups of eight and divide each group into two teams of four.
- · Give pupils two minutes to think of three extra questions.
- Monitor the game and award points.

Activity Book

- Read and complete the fact file for Malak. Write numbers as digits.
 - · Pupils do the activity individually.

Answer key 2 green, looks like a rocket; 3 10,542 km; 4 2,000,000 km; 5 yes, three pink moons; 6 next week; 7 food, tablet and ball

2 Think about your new planet. Complete the 'You' column in Activity 1. Then write, draw and share.

Ask different pupils to read out their descriptions to each other in groups and compare.

Self-evaluation

· Pupils do the activity individually.

Extra practice

Read and complete the sentences.

Answer key 2 telescope, 3 solar system, 4 rocket, space station, 5 planets, 6 satellite

Look at the picture. How many space words can you find?



🗿 🦺 Work with a partner. In turns, say the numbers.

645 1,500 2,450 10,000 50,000 35,000 246,500 1,000,000

- Sylvania (1998) You're going into space! What will you take? Tell your partner.
- Circle the correct word. Match with the answers. Then ask and answer.
 - 1 How far / long / deep is the Moon from the Earth? a
 - 2 How tall / high / long) is the River Jordan?c
 - 3 How deep / far / high is Jabal Umm Ad Dami? b
- **a** It's 384,400 kilometres away!
- b It's 1,854 metres high!
- c It's 251 kilometres long!

Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.

- 1 How long is the River Nile? (1 point) 6,670 kilometres (Lesson 7)
- 2 Find two boys with a telescope. (1 point) Lesson 5 Activity 3
- 3 Where did some of the stones in Stonehenge come from? (1 point) Wales (Lesson 9)

Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.



- 2 Look at the pictures. Write the questions and answers using will or won't.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually. Have different pairs read out the questions and answers.

Answer key 2 What will Jawad make this evening? He'll make a pizza this evening.; 3 What will Mariam use to look at the stars? She'll use a telescope to look at the stars.; 4 Will Jameela and Samia post a letter? Yes, they will.

Vocabulary and Grammar reference

- Translate the words into your language in your notebook. Add more words to the list.
 - Rupils can work in pairs to complete the activity.

Read and complete.

• 🕾 Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

Answer key 2 next, 3 won't, 4 on, 5 When, 6 Will, 7 wear, 8 will, 9 How, 10 deep, 11 It's, 12 metres, 13 high

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils think of more questions for the Challenge game.

Finishing the lesson

Simple Write on the board In Unit 3 I can ..., I am good at ..., I am not very good at Pupils complete the sentences in their notebooks.
 Using the Summative questions technique, ask different pupils What will you do to practise more?

Next lesson Unit 3 Test

Getready for...

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to practise for A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2 and Speaking Parts 2, 3 and 4
- Target language: unit vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Speaking

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- Face response cards

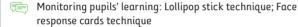
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow a simple dialogue about familiar, everyday activities (GSE 31). Can understand and make connections between words in the same area of meaning, e.g. 'head' and 'hat'
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).
- **Speaking**: Can describe basic differences between two pictures showing familiar activities, using simple language (GSE 39). Can tell a simple story (GSE 41).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation





Peer learning: Expert envoy technique; pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique; portfolio

Starting the lesson

Draw the space vocabulary items from page 36 on the board and have pupils name them. Then say false sentences that pupils correct, e.g. The sun goes around the Earth. (The Earth goes around the sun.) The Earth is a star. (The Earth is a planet.) There are nine planets in our Solar System. (There are eight.) The Moon goes around the Sun. (The Moon goes around the Earth.) The Moon is a planet. (The Moon is a satellite.)

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will revise the work from the unit and practise for the A1 Movers exams.

Practice

Pupil's Book

A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2



- Tell pupils that this is practice for the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2 exam.
- Read the exam tip aloud before pupils start.
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Correct as a class.
- Extension Pupils work in pairs. One pupil is Tareq and the other is Majeda but they should each give their own answers to the questions.

A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

Continuous pace in the questions.

- This activity is based on the A1 Movers Speaking Part 4 exam. Ask volunteers to read the questions aloud.
- Put pupils in pairs. Pupils look at the questions and ask and answer in pairs.
- Extension Pupils think of other questions to ask about space, e.g. What do you know about other planets? Would you like to go to the Moon? Do you think there's life outside our solar system?

Diversity

Challenge

• After pupils have practised their questions and answers, pupils give a summary of what they know about space. They talk for 30 seconds without stopping and without looking in their Pupil's Books

Support

• Read the questions one by one in Activity 2. Brainstorm possible answers to help pupils before they work in pairs.

Extra activity Collaborative work

• Livide the class into groups. Ask them to discuss what they liked about the unit using the Expert envoy technique. Pupils write their opinion about the unit under the lesson headings. The envoy reports back to the class.

Extra activity TPR

• 🗐 Using the Face response cards, pupils react to your questions: How much did you like Activity 1? Was it easy, OK or difficult? How much did you like Activity 2? Was it easy, OK or difficult?

Activity Book

A1 Movers Speaking Part 2

- 1) Think! Look at the pictures in Activity 2. Write the words and phrases you can use to tell the story in your notebook.
 - Tell pupils that this is practice for the A1 Movers Speaking Part 2 exam.
 - Pupils work in pairs to write the words and phrases they
 - Theck answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Possible answers be ill, comet, Earth, travel to space, teacher, be shy, theatre play, Moon, be angry, spacesuit

Do! Look at the pictures and tell the story.

- · Allow pupils time to think about a story using the pictures and words they wrote from Activity 1.
- · Pupils can tell the story individually.

A1 Movers Speaking Part 3

Which picture is different? Write why.

• Pupils look at the pictures and decide which one is different. Then they complete the sentences under each group of pictures. They ask and answer in pairs.

Answer key 1 The solar system is different because the other things are artificial / we use the other things to explore the solar system. 2 The Earth is different because the other things go around the Earth.

Get ready for...

A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 2

Read the text and choose the
hest answer

1 Tareq: Hi, Majeda! Will you

go to Space Club this

afternoon?

Majeda: A No, I don't think I'll

go today. I've got a lot of homework.

B No, I had English yesterday. I'm tired.

C No, I haven't got a pen today. Can I borrow yours?

2 Tareq: Did you make a

rocket last week at Space Club?

Majeda: A Yes, I painted a picture.

B Yes, but I didn't finish it.

C Yes, I made a comet.

tip; Exam

The answers are often very similar. Make sure you read each one carefully.

3 Majeda: Oh no! I haven't got

my bag! I think I left

it on the bus!

Tareq: A I'll go to the park

and look for it.

B I'll ask if I can drive the bus home.

C I'll go and ask the bus driver if he's

got it.

4Tareq: Look! I talked to the

bus driver! Here's

your bag!

Majeda: A No, thanks, Tareq!

B Thank you, Tareq!

C Sorry, Tareq!

A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

2 @ Let's talk about space. Answer the questions.

- What do you know about the solar system?
- How is life different in space?
- Would you like to be an astronaut? Why?

forty-seven



Extra activity Fast finishers

- Pupils write down their story for Activity 2.
- Suggest pupils keep their work in their portfolios.

- Ask How did you get on in Unit 3? Which lesson did you like best?
 Which words were the easiest and most difficult to remember?
- Susing the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask pupils how successful their learning is so far and, on a scale of 1–5, have them rate how much they enjoyed this unit.
- Congratulate pupils on completing the unit.
- Ask them which song or chant they liked. Have a class vote and pupils sing the winning song or chant.

Mapping

Topic

Theme 6: Recreation

Scope and Sequence Matrix

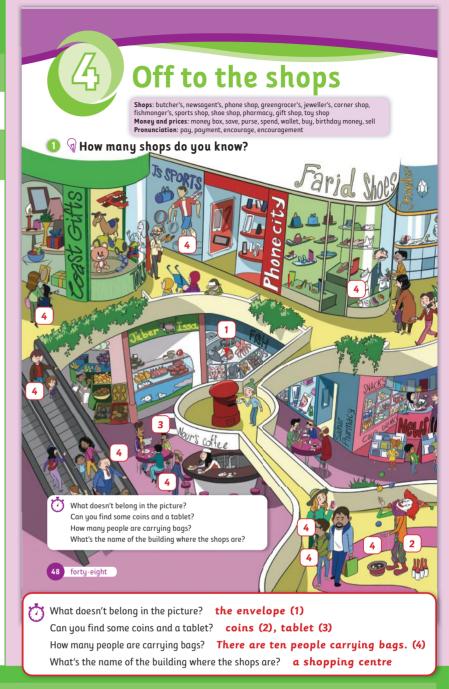
Listening: understanding the main idea and specific details in oral texts describing people, places, and events; taking simple notes while listening; identifying one or more key ideas in an oral presentation or conversation; identifying the topic and setting of oral texts as well as participants and their roles; asking and answering questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something; using nonlanguage-based clues to guess meaning (e.g. gestures, situation, relationships, etc.)

Speaking: taking turns in pair or group discussions; retelling stories and factual events using a variety of structures; partaking in long dialogues and exchanges; following rules for discussions (e.g. speaking one at a time about the topics under discussion)

Reading: expressing, and justifying, opinions on characters and events; reading and understanding short, simple stories and comic strips involving familiar, concrete situations written in a high-frequency everyday language

Writing: independently writing short texts (letters, memos, reminders, stories) using adequate spelling, punctuation, grammar, and organisation; using the writing process to write simple texts (e.g. short stories with pictures)

Viewing and presenting: viewing visual information and showing understanding by asking relevant questions; responding to a variety of oral presentations; interpreting visual cues to analyse and make inferences about the intended message; using body language to add meaning to oral presentation and to connect with audience



Learning Outcomes and Performance Indicators

Listening: identify the main ideas and specific details in oral descriptions of people, places, and events; respond to questions before, during and after listening; respond to oral presentations, instructions or conversations through questions or statements; extract information from an oral text to do a task; identify the topic of oral texts; identify the setting, participants and plot of a short oral story; use clues to understand new or unfamiliar words when listening (context, illustrations, visual elements); ask and answer questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something

Speaking: speak intelligibly while making statements, asking questions, giving instructions and reporting events; retell stories and factual events based on visual input using 4–7 connected sentences that use a variety of structures (simple present, simple past, present progressive, simple future, questions, negatives, permission, suggestions, invitations); identify and use prefixes and suffixes (un-, dis-, ir-, -ful, -ment, -tion) and visual clues to infer the meaning of new vocabulary items

Reading: use various text features (captions, subheadings) to locate key facts or information in a text; skim and scan a text for main ideas and key details; identify the topic, main ideas(s), and key facts in a reading text; explain how specific images or illustrations clarify and contribute to a text

Writing: use correct sentence grammar, punctuation, and capitalisation; use simple and compound sentences to produce a variety of text types (letters, email, memos, reminders)

Viewing and presenting: start to demonstrate understanding of visual information by asking relevant questions; interpret visual cues in order to analyse and make inferences about the intention of the message; identify aspects of body language in a dramatic presentation and explain how they are used to convey the mood and personal traits of characters; rehearse and deliver individually or in collaboration a visual presentation on familiar course theme topics; use body language to add meaning to oral presentations

Unit objectives

to talk about shops, money and prices

Language

Vocabulary	Shops butcher's, newsagent's, phone shop, greengrocer's, jeweller's, corner shop, fishmonger's, sports shop, shoe shop, pharmacy, gift shop, toy shop Money and prices money box, save, purse, spend, wallet, buy, birthday money, sell
Grammar	Relative clauses have to/don't have to
Functions	Asking for a price: How much is (it)? It's (fifteen) dinars and (fifty) piastres.
Pronunciation	Changing verbs to nouns using the suffix -ment: pay – payment, encourage – encouragement

Key competences

Linguistic competence: use language as an instrument for communication (L. 1–14)

Mathematical, science and technological competences: order to complete a task (L. 3 and 4)

Digital competence: use Pupil's Book eBook (L. 1–14)

Social and civic competences: learn to be creative (L. 3 and 4); make suggestions about shops to visit (L. 12)

Cultural awareness and expression: raise awareness of cultural similarities and differences (L. 9)

Learning to learn: reflect on what has been learnt and self-evaluate progress (L. 1–14); use previous knowledge (L. 1); follow instructions (L. 1–14); personalisation of language learnt (L. 5 and 9)

Initiative and entrepreneurship: choose topic for the project (L. 9)

21st Century Skills for Learning and Innovation

•	
Critical thinking	Predicting (L. 11); Problem solving (L. 3); Logical thinking (L. 1, 2, 3, 4 and 9); Finding information (L. 1, 2, 3, 4, 10, 11 and 12); Planning (L. 12); Reflecting on learning (L. 1–14)
Creativity	Designing a phone case (L. 3)
Communication	Describing what you can buy in shops (L. 1); Describing a person, place or thing (L. 5); Talking about what you have/don't have to do (L. 7 and 8); Talking about a shop (L. 9); Giving prices (L. 10); Functional dialogue (L. 10 and 12); Challenge game (L. 13)
Collaboration	Project groupwork (L. 9); Acting out (L. 3)

Evaluation

- Assessment for Learning: throughout the unit (see detailed notes in the lesson plans)
- Self-assessment: Pupil's Book p. 58; Activity Book p. 52
- Unit 4 Extra practice: Activity Book pp. 53 and 54
- Unit 4 Photocopiable Resources (optional): Vocabulary 1 and 2, Grammar 1 and 2, Communication game, Song, Reading differentiation, Listening differentiation, English in action, CLIL
- Unit 4 Test
- End-of-semester 1 test

External exams

Pupil's Book	Activity Book		
A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1	A1 Movers Listening Part 5		
A1 Movers Speaking Part 4			

Vocabulary

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use shops vocabulary
- Target language: butcher's, newsagent's, phone shop, greengrocer's, jeweller's, corner shop, fishmonger's, sports shop, shoe shop, pharmacy, gift shop, toy shop
- Skills: Listening, Speaking

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils
- stopwatch
- Resource 4 A

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- **Listening**: Can recognise familiar key words and phrases in short, basic descriptions (e.g. of objects, people or animals), if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 24).
- Speaking: Can describe everyday activities in town (e.g. buying food at the supermarket, borrowing a book from the library), using simple language (GSE 35).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Write Shops on the board. Ask How often do you go to the shops? Who do you go with? What do you like buying? Pupils raise their hands to answer

Presentation

• (*) Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to talk about shops.

Practice

Pupil's Book



🚺 🗑 How many shops do you know?

- Refer pupils to page 48. Read the rubric and tell pupils to look at the pictures and find the shops. Give pupils an example: Farid Shoes is a shoe shop. Pupils work in pairs and find the shops they know
- 🗐 Using the Lollipop stick technique, ask pupils to name shops they know.
- 👸 🕮 Place pupils in the same pairs. Pick up the stopwatch and explain that they have one minute to answer the questions
- · Check answers as a class by having pupils raise their hands to give the answers.
- Extension (22) Ask pupils to look at page 48 again. Have them describe the picture in pairs, telling each other where the people in the picture are, what they are doing, and to name any objects or appearance words that they know, e.g. mobile phone, moustache.

2 🎧 4.1 Listen, point and repeat.

- · Refer pupils to page 49. Tell pupils to count how many shops they knew.
- · Play the audio.
- Tell pupils to look at the photos 1-12 and practise the new vocabulary. Ask these questions in any order and have pupils call out the shop:

You can buy meat/oranges/fish/medicine at this shop. You go to this shop to buy a comic/pair of earrings/basketball/

You can get a mobile phone/all kinds of things/leather shoes/ a doll at this shop.

Have pupils say a word to their partner for them to point to the correct picture. Then they swap.

\(\sum \) Look for the words from Activity 2 in the picture on page 48. Write the missing word.

• 🗐 🎮 Give pupils one minute to work in pairs to find the shop words and write the missing word. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Creativity

• Pupils work in pairs. Give each pair a sheet of A4 paper. They draw an imaginary line of shops in a local shopping street and the favourite shops they would like there. They label each type of shop and present their shopping street to the class, e.g. This is a sports shop. You can buy tennis balls here.

🛂 🧸 💭 You and your partner need to buy some things from the shops. Decide where you'll go.

- Rlace pupils in the same pairs for this activity. Ask different pupils to say what they can see in the pictures.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.

Extra activity TPR

- Assign four shops to each corner of the room: fishmonger's, butcher's, toy shop and jeweller's.
- Say (Name), let's get some fish/some meat/a doll/a necklace.
- The pupil goes to the correct shop. Repeat with other pupils and also change the shops.

Finishing the lesson

- Ask pupils to describe their favourite shop in groups of four.
- Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they found difficult about the lesson.

Lesson 2 Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use shops vocabulary
- Target language: butcher's, newsagent's, phone shop, greengrocer's, jeweller's, corner shop, fishmonger's, sports shop, shoe shop, pharmacy, gift shop, toy shop
- Skills: Writing

Global Scale of English (GSE)

Writing: Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16).



Assessment for Learning

Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique

Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Starting the lesson

- Write some shop vocabulary on the board.
- Describe one shop using the language from the previous lesson.
- Pupils guess the right shop from the description.
- If you have time, pupils can continue with descriptions and their classmates quess.

Practice

🚺 Ö Look at Pupil's Book page 48 and write.

• & Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. Have pupils check their answers with their partners.

Answer key 1 He's posting a letter.; 2 He's got red curly hair, and he's tall and slim

🙎 🗑 Look and write.

- Pupils complete the activity individually. They then talk about the things you can buy in the shops in pairs.
- Pupils work in groups and make spider webs in their notebooks for the *I'm learning* box in their Activity Books.

Answer key 2 butcher's, 3 pharmacy, 4 phone shop, 5 greengrocer's, 6 gift shop, 7 sports shop, 8 fishmonger's, 9 shoe shop, 10 jeweller's, 11 newsagent's, 12 corner shop

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Have pupils write down two lists: the shops they knew and the shops that are new words for them.

- Eas In groups of three or four, pupils close their books and write down the names of the shops and one thing you can buy in each shop.
- 🗃 Ask How many shops did you remember?







Who is the thief? Go to page 66 to find out.

The third man in the line of four men: black T-shirt, blue jeans, trainers, moustache and blue bag.



After you read Number the sentences in the correct order to tell the story.

1 **a** They go up the escalator. 3 **b** The children see a man stealing a phone. **6 c** The children look for the thief outside the shop. **5 d** Bo tries to stop the thief. **2** e A man walks into Katy. 4 f They tell the shop assistant about the thief.

- 6 Act out the story.
- 6 ♣ ★ Design your own phone case! Tell your partner about it.

fifty-one



Objectives

- Lesson aims: to listen to a story
- Target language: revision of shops vocabulary; downstairs, escalator, phone case, upstairs
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- a ball
- a mobile phone case
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- coloured pencils
- Resource 9

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- **Speaking:** Can act out parts of a picture story using simple actions and words (GSE 30).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Monitoring pupils' learning: Basketball technique; Happy/Sad face technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; acting out

Starting the lesson

Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils to say one shop each from Lesson 1.

Presentation

• Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to a story.

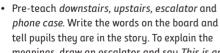
Practice

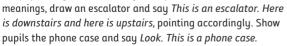
Pupil's Book

Before you read Which shops can you see in the story?

• Refer pupils to pages 50 and 51.

🔼 🎧 4.2 Listen and read.





- · Plau the audio
- Check comprehension. Ask Who is Hamed buying a present for? (his mum) Has Bo seen an escalator before? (no) What does the man steal? (phones)

Diversity

Challenge

• Before pupils open their books, tell them the title of the story and where it takes place. Pupils predict what might happen.

• Pre-teach other words that pupils might have problems with.

3) Who is the thief? Go to page 66 to find out.

- Pupils discuss in pairs.
- 🗐 Using the Happy / Sad face technique, ask Did you find the thief?

After you read Number the sentences in the correct order to tell the story.

• Pupils work individually to complete the activity. Ask for answers using the Basketball technique.

🏮 💒 Act out the story.

- 🟂 Divide pupils into groups of five. Allocate a role to each pupil (Katy, Millie, Hamed, Bo and the thief).
- · Pupils act out the story in groups.

👩 🦺 🌟 Design your own phone case! Tell your partner about it.

- · Give pupils sheets of A4 paper for their designs.
- Rupils describe their case to a partner. Monitor.
- Extension Internet search key words: cool phone case images

Extra activity Critical thinking

Divide the class into four groups. Assign one shop from the story to each group. Give the groups one minute to make a list of things you can buy in their shop. Which group found the most

Extra activity TPR

• Pupils listen to the story and pretend to talk on the phone when they hear the word phone.

Finishing the lesson

Ask pupils to retell the story in a round around the class.

Lesson 4 Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to review a story
- Target language: revision of shops vocabulary; downstairs, escalator, phone case, upstairs
- Skills: Reading

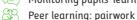
Global Scale of English (GSE)

Reading: Can follow the sequence of events in short, simple cartoon stories that use familiar key words (GSE 32).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

How to work with stories

Stage 1 - Before listening to the story

First, talk to pupils about the characters appearing in the story and about the places in which they appear. Ask pupils what they can see in the pictures and invite them to guess what will happen in the story. Remember to praise pupils for all their ideas, but do not correct them and do not explain too much. (In a moment pupils will listen to the recording and check if they were right). Focus more on what occurred in the story than on the language itself. First, pupils will understand the story as a whole, then they will remember the vocabulary used in the story.

Stage 2 - Listening to the story

At this stage remember to encourage pupils to compare their previous ideas with what actually happened in the story. Play the recorded story and ask pupils to point to the appropriate pictures in the Pupil's Book

Stage 3 - After listening to the story

After listening to the story together, ask pupils a few questions about it to make sure that they understood what happened. When answering, pupils additionally practise and consolidate the previously introduced language material.

Stage 4 - Acting out

After having listened to the story a few times, your pupils should be ready to act it out. Pupils can contribute to the story, first by making particular gestures and then, depending on the difficulty of the text, by using simple phrases. You may also play particular parts of the recording and ask pupils to repeat them each time.

Next, you may divide pupils into groups and ask each of them to say the lines of one character. Under the teacher's supervision and on the basis of the pictures, pupils quote the lines of appropriate characters. To make this exercise more interesting, you can bring items to be used as props.

Suggested exercises

- Ask pupils to draw a scene from the story they have heard.
- Ask pupils to invent another ending for the story they have board.
- Pupils draw their favourite character.
- Talk to pupils about what the characters learnt.
- Ask pupils about the way they would behave or feel if they were one of the characters.
- Read some lines from the story. Pupils should provide the name of the character who says the lines.

Starting the lesson

• Ask pupils to tell you what happens in the story from the previous lesson. Replay the audio (track 4.2) if you have time.

Practice

- After you read Look, read and order.
 - $\bullet \hspace{0.1cm}$ Use the Lollipop stick technique to check answers.

Answer key 1 How does it work?; 2 What an unkind man!; 3 What's he doing?; 4 Where did he go?

- 2 Circle the correct answer.
 - Pupils complete the activity individually. Have them check their answers in pairs.

Answer key 2 phone case, 3 stealing, 4 sports bag

- 3 Values Read and tick (✔). Which are examples of good citizenship?
 - & Pupils tick and then compare answers with a partner.

Answer key 1 . 4 . 6 .

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils find shopping words in the story and write them in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

 Susing the Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they learnt about machines and mechanisms (the escalator) from the story.

CLIL Link

In Unit 4, the story is based around the concept of compound machines and mechanisms (an escalator) from the Science

The Discovery Team are shopping at the mall to buy a present for Hamed's mother when they have to take the escalator to go upstairs. Bo has never seen an escalator before and Katy explains to him how it works. When they arrive upstairs, a man bumps into Katy, and later they see him stealing phones at the phone shop.

To explore the concept of compound machines further, you can use Resource 9.

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use relative clauses
- Target language: It's the man who we saw earlier. We're in the shop where my brother works.
- Skills: Reading, Speaking

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper/card, three for each pupil
- Resource 13 A

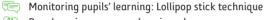
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can identify specific information in a simple story, if guided by questions (GSE 35).
- Speaking: Can read aloud a short, simple story in a way that can be understood (GSE 35). Can describe someone's personality in a basic way, if guided by prompts (GSE 39). Can describe common everyday objects using simple language (GSE 31). Can describe where they live in a basic way (GSE 29).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: groupwork; pairwork

Starting the lesson

- · Write Stop, Thief! on the board.
- Ask pupils what they remember from the story from Lesson 3. Prompt with questions: What did Hamed buy? Who was the present for? What did Bo see for the first time?

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to use relative clauses: who, which and where which give us more information about a person, thing or place.

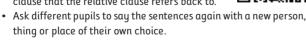
Practice

Pupil's Book

- $m{\Omega}
 earrow \mathsf{Look}$ back! Tick ($m{arepsilon}$) the sentence in this picture.
 - Refer pupils to pages 50-52.

4.3 Listen and repeat.

- Play the audio.
- Tell pupils to copy the sentences. Then they underline in red the word before the relative clause that the relative clause refers back to.



- Extension Pupils look at the story on pages 50–51. They find the sentences with relative clauses in the story and write them in their notebooks.
- Circle the correct word.
 - Rupils complete the activity individually. They then compare answers with a partner.
 - Theck answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils add number 6 to Activity 3 with their own idea.

🛂 🧘 💭 In pairs, describe a person, place or thing. Your partner guesses.

• R Pupils work in the same pairs. Monitor.

Diversity

Challenge

• Tell pupils that they should say two sentences each, for each relative clause.

Support

• Pupils brainstorm people, things and places as a class before completing the activity in pairs.

Extra activity TPR

• Hand each pupil three sheets of A4 paper/card. Pupils write Person, Thing and Place on the cards. Read out sentences with relative clauses from the lesson. Pupils hold up the correct card.

Finishing the lesson

Put pupils in groups of three. Say sentence starters (or write them on the board) and ask the groups to finish them using who, which or where. Monitor groups and then check answers.

Lesson 6 Activity Book

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use relative clauses
- Target language: It's the man who we saw earlier. We're in the shop where my brother works.
- Skills: Writing, Listening, Speaking

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of where they are and what they are doing. (GSE 30)
- Speaking: Can describe common everyday objects using simple language (GSE 31).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation

Peer learning: pairwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

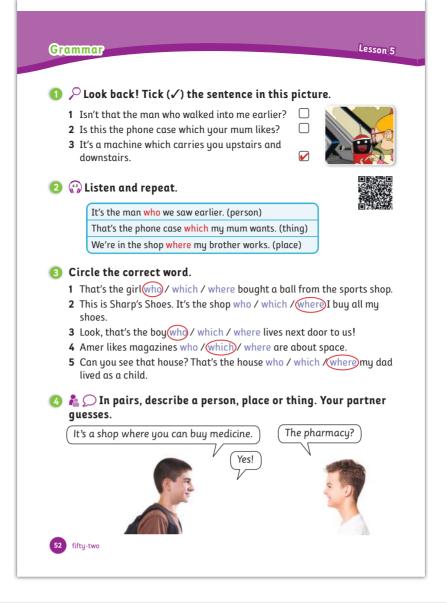
• Write who, which and where on the board. Ask pupils to tell you when each one is used.

Practice



· Play the audio.





1 Man: Hi, Tara! What are you doing?

Girl: Hi, Grandpa! I'm looking at some photos. Look! Yesterday, I went shopping with my friends.

Man: Really? What are your friends' names?

Girl: The girl who's wearing a blue T-shirt is Salwa. **Man:** The one who's holding a spacesuit costume?

Girl: Yes ... it's for the school play.

2 Man: What about the other girl in the toy shop?

Girl: You mean the girl who's next to Salwa?

Man: Yes, the one who's wearing a red T-shirt.

Girl: She's Dalia. She loves teddy bears!

3 Girl: My best friends, Fatima and Jameela, are buying

Man: So they're at the newsagent's.

Girl: That's right. Fatima is the girl who's holding a sports magazine.

Man: Is she the girl who's wearing glasses?

Girl: Yes, she is!

 $\textbf{4 Man}: \quad \text{So Jameela is the girl who is next to Fatima}.$

Girl: Yes. She's got a magazine which is about arts and crafts. She loves making models and drawing.

Man: I see.

5 Man: Is this the sports shop where our neighbour Ramzi

Girl: Yes, and these are two of my friends, Reem and Lubna. They're sisters.

Man: So is Reem the girl who is holding a football?

Girl: Yes, correct!

6 Man: What about Lubna? Is she the girl in a wheelchair, next to the shoe boxes?

Girl: No, she isn't. Lubna is the girl who's holding a baseball.

Man: I see. She's wearing a baseball cap which looks like

Girl: Yes, we're in the same baseball team!

Answer key Dalia: girl in a red T-shirt, holding a teddy bear; Fatima: girl holding a sports magazine; Jameela: girl holding a magazine about arts and crafts; Reem: girl holding a football; Lubna: girl holding a baseball

2 Complete the sentences with who, which or where.

· Pupils work individually.

Answer key 2 which, 3 who, 4 where, 5 who, 6 which

In pairs, look at Activity 1 and play a guessing game.
Use who, which or where.

• & Place pupils in pairs for this activity.

Finishing the lesson

 Susing the Summative questions technique, ask Do you understand how to use relative clauses?

Vocabulary and Grammar

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use vocabulary connected to money and prices; to learn and use have to/don't have to; to learn and sing a song
- Target language: money box, save, purse, spend, wallet, buy, birthday money, sell
- Skills: Listening, Speaking

Materials

- a ball
- 8 word cards with words and phrases written on each one: buy, birthday money, money box, purse, save, sell, spend, wallet
- Resources 4 B, 13 B, 17. 21

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Listening: Can recognise familiar words and phrases in short, simple songs or chants (GSE 18).
- Speaking: Can repeat single words, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 18). Can sing a basic song from memory (GSE 22). Can talk about everyday activities using simple language (GSE 32). Can talk about everyday activities using simple language (GSE 34).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique Peer learning: pairwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

· Ask Where do people keep money? and elicit answers.

Presentation

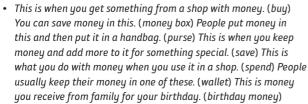
- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn and use vocabulary connected to money and prices and they will learn to talk about what they have to and don't have to do. They will also sing a song.
- Stick the word cards on the board. Ask pupils to count how many words they already know. Explain to pupils that these are the new words for the lesson today.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🎧 4.5 Listen, point and repeat.

- Refer pupils to page 53.
- · Play the audio.
- Practise the vocabulary to consolidate the meanings with these definitions. Pupils call out



• Extension Play Hangman with the new words.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Republis work in pairs and write a sentence for each new vocabulary item. They swap sentences with other pairs to compare.

2) 🮧 4.6 & 4.7 Listen and sing.

- · Play the song and tell pupils to listen only this time.
- Read out the song one line at a time and have pupils repeat.
- Play the song again and encourage pupils to join in
- 4.7 Play the karaoke version of the song again and encourage pupils to sing.

4.8 Listen and repeat.

- · Play the audio.
- Tell pupils have to means it is necessary to do something; you don't have a choice. Tell pupils to find have to and don't have to in the song.
- · Ask What do you have to do at school?

🔼 🧘 💭 In pairs, ask and answer.

- Ask three pupils to read out the examples.
- Place pupils in pairs for this activity. Monitor.

Diversity

Challenge

• Pupils can complete the activity in pairs without preparation. Ask different pairs to report their ideas to the class. Continue a class discussion.

Support

• Pupils brainstorm ideas as a class.

5) 🜓 Pupil A: Activity Book, page 61.

Pupil B: Activity Book, page 63.

- Place pupils in pairs for this activity.
- Walk around the class monitoring pairs.

Extra activity TPR

• Place the word cards around the class. Read out the definitions from Activity 1 teacher's notes again. Ask different pupils to find the correct cards

Finishing the lesson

- Write some of the vocabulary connected to money on the board but jumble the letters. Ask pupils to work out what the words are and write them correctly.
- Summative questions technique, ask pupils what the most interesting part of the lesson was and to give reasons for their answers

Lesson 8 **Activity Book**

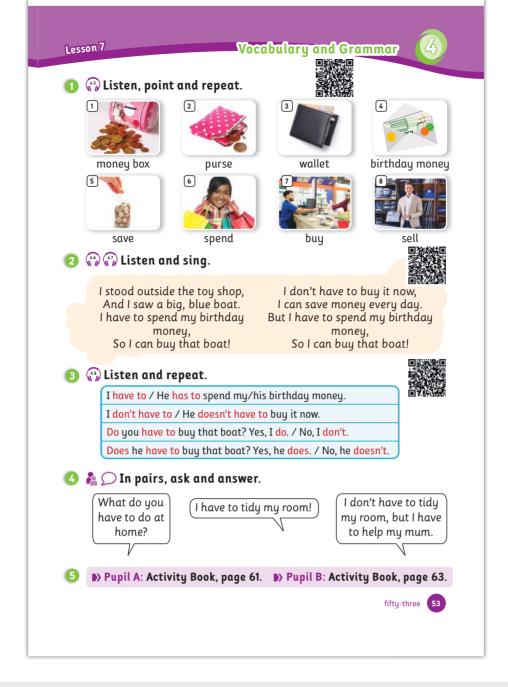
Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn and use vocabulary connected to money and prices; to learn and use have to/don't have to
- Target language: money box, save, purse, spend, wallet, buy, birthday money, sell
- Skills: Reading, Writing

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 41).
- Writing: Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16).





Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork

Starting the lesson

• Ask pupils to tell you something they do or don't have to do at home.

Practice

- Find and circle money words in the wordsnake.
 - Rupils complete the activity individually. They then compare answers with a partner.

Answer key purse, buy, wallet, money box, sell, spend, save

- 2 Label the pictures. Use the words from Activity 1.
 - Check feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Answer key 2 wallet, 3 purse, 4 save, 5 money box, 6 sell, 7 buy, 8 spend

- 🗿 🗑 Look at the pictures in Activity 2. Tell the story. What's the present?
 - Pupils complete the activity in pairs.

Read and write the correct form of have to.

- Rupils work individually and check in pairs.
- Theck answers using the Lollipop stick technique.
- Extension 2 In pairs, pupils say what they have to and don't have to do tomorrow.

Answer key 2 doesn't have to; 3 doesn't have to, has to; 4 have to, don't have to

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils copy the song but change the big blue boat to something they would like and draw a picture.

- Ask Do you like the song? Can you remember it without looking at the book?
- · Ask some fast finishers / different pupils for a different idea for a toy. Pupils sing the song with a different toy.
- 4.7 Play the karaoke version of the song again and encourage pupils to sing.



Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn about corner shops in different countries
- · Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- · Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- a ball
- objects that you can buy at a corner shop (newspaper, magazine, stamps, cleaning products, stationery, ice cream wrapper)
- · sheets of A4 paper, six for each group
- coloured pencils

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41). Can express likes and dislikes in relation to familiar topics in a basic way (GSE 29).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

 Write Corner shop on the board. Ask What can you buy at a corner shop? and elicit answers.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will talk about corner shops in different countries.
- Ask to guess which English-speaking countries they will read about.
 Write their ideas on the board.
- Introduce these words from the text. If available, show pupils the
 objects you brought in. Write the words on the board with the first
 letter missing. Pupils raise their hands to say the complete words:
 newspaper, magazine, stamps, cleaning products, stationery, ice
 cream.
- Ask What would you buy from a corner shop from this list? They come to the front, point to an object/word and say I'd buy....

Culture notes.

- There are fewer milk bars in Australia today than 30 years ago, but you can still find them in suburban areas.
- In North America you can usually find a convenience store at a petrol station.
- Corner shops usually open early and close late, so they are open when other shops are closed.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Before you read What do you buy from corner shops?

- Refer pupils to page 54 and read the question. Pupils discuss in pairs for one minute. Then ask for class feedback.
- Tell pupils to look at the photos. Ask What can you see?

2 🮧 4.9 Listen and read.

- Tell pupils to find different names for *corner* shop in the text.
- Play the audio all the way through.
- Check comprehension with questions. Ask What other names did you find? (milk bar, dairy, bodega, convenience store) What countries did you read about? (the UK, Australia, New Zealand, North America/the USA) Look at the countries on the board. Did you guess these countries?

After you read Activity Book, page 48.

 Pupils turn to page 48 in their Activity Books and complete the activities.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in pairs and write three more sentences about the text: two true and one false. They then read them to another pair who guess which are true.

🚺 🧞 💭 In pairs, ask and answer.

- Place pupils in pairs for this activity.
- Ask different pairs to demonstrate a question and answer.

Diversity

Challenge

• Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils to say a key word from the text that is connected to the theme of shops. Pupils write the words in their vocabulary lists.

Support

• Write key words from the text on the board. Have pupils copy the words into their vocabulary lists.

Project

Make a TV advert for a corner shop!



- A Divide pupils into groups of four.
- Explain that pupils should write a script for their advert and that there should be something for every pupil in the group to say.
- Each group presents their advert to the class
- Extension Film the adverts on a mobile phone. Pupils watch their adverts.

Extra activity TPR

Call out different things you can buy at a corner shop. Pupils
mime they are using each thing, e.g. newspaper, ice cream, pen,
chocolate bar, carton of juice, a stamp.



f 2 2 2

food, drinks, newspapers

Activity Book

- After you read Read and write True or False.
 - Check answers using the Basketball technique.

 Answer key 2 False, 3 False, 4 True, 5 False, 6 True
- 🔼 🎎 Open a corner shop!
 - Place pupils in groups of six for this activity.
 - Hand six pieces of paper to each group. Each pupil draws one item you can buy at their shop.
 - Ask for class feedback after pupils complete the activity.
 Prompt with questions: What does your shop sell? What are your prices? How much money did your shop make?

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils draw a shelf with products in a corner shop and label the items you can buy there.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Summative questions technique, ask What did you learn today? and have pupils raise their hands to offer answers.

Englishinaction

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn to ask for a price; to learn and practise changing verbs to nouns using the suffix -ment
- Target language: How much is (it)? It's (fifteen) dinars and (fifty) piastres.
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- Yes/No response cards
- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- Resource 25

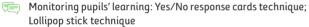
Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand some details in short, simple dialogues on familiar everyday topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 30).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can identify how much something costs in short, simple dialogues about the price of something, e.g. in a shop, if speech is slow and clear (GSE 31).
- Speaking: Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41). Can act out a short dialogue or role play, given prompts (GSE 38).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

• Ask pupils questions for them to respond with their Yes/No response cards. Ask Do you spend money on presents? Are you careful about prices? Do you buy things which are expensive / cheap? Do you like buying presents? Do you like getting presents?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn to ask for prices.
- Ask What do we call a shop where you can buy presents? and elicit gift shop. Ask What was the last present you bought? Who was it for? Pupils raise their hands to offer answers.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🖫 What can you find in a gift shop?

• Refer pupils to page 55. Pupils think about ideas individually and then compare their answers in pairs.

2 🎧 4.10 Listen. How much is the present which Laith buys?

- · Play the audio. Pupils raise their hands to offer answers. Do not confirm answers yet.
- Extension Internet search key words: money in Jordan



4.11 Listen, read and check.

- · Play the audio again and pupils listen and read. Confirm the answer to Activity 2.
- Draw pupils' attention to the Say it! box. Read out the sentences and have pupils repeat as a class

Extra activity Collaborative work

- Laith; the other is the shop assistant. Play the audio and pause after each sentence. Pupils from each group repeat what they hear in
- Have different pupils stand up and read the dialogue.

🚺 💭 Go shopping for presents for your family.

- Place pupils in pairs and assign Pupil A and Pupil B. Pupil A is a customer and asks for information and prices and Pupil B is the shop assistant. Then pupils swap roles. Use the dialogue in Activity 3 as a model.
- Extension Pupils repeat the activity with ideas of their own.

Diversity

Challenge

· Have pupils perform their dialogues to the class.

· Give pupils one minute to prepare their ideas.

Extra activity TPR

- Play Prices bingo. Hand each pupil a sheet of A4 paper and tell them to draw a grid with six squares in it. They write six of these prices in the squares: 15.50 JD, 16.70 JD, 10.20 JD, 9.25 JD, 4.50 JD, 30.00 JD, 14.10 JD, 1.60 JD.
- Read out the prices in random order. When pupils hear a price in their grid, they cross it out. When they cross out all their prices, they stand up and shout Bingo!

Pronunciation

5 🎧 4.12 Listen and read. What do you notice about the coloured words?



- Play the audio. Play it again, pausing after each line, and have pupils repeat.
- & Put pupils in pairs and have them discuss the coloured words. Ask them to identify the verbs and the nouns. See if they can think of more examples (enjoy – enjoyment, agree – agreement, etc.).

Activity Book

🚺 🎧 4.13 Listen and match. Then write.



• Check answers using the Lollipop stick



1 Boy: This magazine about video games is three dinars and fifty piastres

2 Girl: I'll buy this pizza. It's six dinars and ninety-nine piastres.

This bag of apples is one eighty. 3 Boy:

4 Boy: How much is this football? Man: It's five ninety-five.

5 Woman: This pen is two dinars and thirty piastres. 6 Girl: I'll buy the pack of shoelaces. It's four fifteen.

Answer key 2 f, 6.99 JD; 3 a, 1.80 JD; 4 b, 5.95 JD; 5 d, 2.30 JD; 6 e, 4.15 JD

- 🚺 🗑 What can you find in a gift shop?
- Listen. How much is the present which Laith buys?
- 3 👣 Listen, read and check.

Hi, can I look at a necklace which is in the window, please?

The one which has got the blue star on it.

How much is it?

Oh, I haven't got enough money. I've only got thirteen dinars.

OK, that's a good idea. I'll have that one, please. Thank you!

Sure. Which necklace would uou like?

Here it is.

It's fifteen dinars and fifty piastres.

How about the necklace which has a flower on it? That's twelve ninety-nine.

My pleasure!

Go shopping for presents for your family.



Can I look at a necklace which is in the window, please? How much is it?

It's fifteen dinars and fifty piastres. / It's fifteen fifty. I'll have that one, please.

Thank you!

My pleasure!

Pronunciation

Listen and read. What do you notice about the coloured words?



I'll pay for the necklace. I have coins for the payment.

> I'll encourage my friends to walk to the sports shop. They need encouragement to walk!



fifty-five

📦 You've got five dinars. Look at Activity 1. What two things can you buy?

Answer key apples, pen

- 🕠 4.14 Look and write. Listen and check. Say a sentence for each word. What makes each verb into a noun?
 - · Pupils complete the table with the words in the box.

 - · Play the audio to check answers.
 - Put pupils in pairs and ask them to make sentences using the words. Monitor and help when necessary.
 - Ask pupils how we change the verbs into nouns (we add the suffix -ment).

Answer key Verb: agree, amuse; Noun: payment, excitement

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Pupils write the questions for the shop assistant. Then they try to remember the answers.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Summative questions technique, ask Do you think you can ask for prices in English?



Objectives

- Lesson aims: to read and understand a reading text
- Target language: revision of unit vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pair of pupils
- Resource 29

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can identify key information in short, simple factual texts from the headings and illustrations (GSE 33). Can follow simple stories with basic dialogue and simple narrative (GSE 35). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 33). Can identify the overall theme of a simple illustrated story, if guided by questions or prompts (GSE 38).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique

Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork; Two stars and a wish



Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Write trainers on the board. Ask What's the name of the shop where you can buy trainers? What's the word for a person who steals something? What's the name of the object which a woman often puts her moneu in?
- Ask a pupil to write the three words on the board (sports shop, thief, purse). Say We're doing a reading lesson today. What am I looking for? Elicit key words that are in the reading text.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will read a text about some thieves in a shop. Ask pupils to predict what they think the story will be about, using the words on the board.
- Write storeroom, detective and notice on the board. Read them out and have pupils repeat.
- Explain the meanings with sentences: Shops keep some items they sell in a storeroom. A shop detective watches people so they don't steal things. A shop detective looks carefully and notices everything.
- Ask pupils to add ideas to their predictions for the story with these new

Diversity

Challenge

· Ask pupils extra questions, e.q. Is there a detective in your corner shop/sports shop? Have you ever noticed a thief in a shop?

• Point to the words on the board as you say the sentences. Speak slowly and clearly. Explain meanings in L1 if necessary.

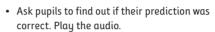
Practice

Pupil's Book

Before you read What kind of text is it?

• Refer pupils to page 56. Using the Lollipop stick technique, ask pupils to quickly say what kind of text it is.

2 🎧 4.15 Listen and read.





Check comprehension with questions. Ask When did Tareq go to the sports shop? (on Saturday) What did the thieves steal? (some expensive trainers) Did they get away? (no) What happened? (The store detective shut them in the storeroom after putting her purse in there.)

Extra activity Critical thinking

- Pupils work in pairs and find all the words in the text connected to the theme of shopping. They write the words in their notebooks. Hand each pair a sheet of A4 paper. They write an activity on it with the words in a box and gapped sentences. They swap sentences with another pair and solve their activities.
- Pairs give each other feedback about their activities, using the Two stars and a wish technique.

Extra activity TPR

• Tell pupils that they are at the sports shop and they should mime what you describe. Say

You are Tareq and you are trying on some trainers. You are a thief and you are putting some trainers in a bag. You are the shop assistant and you are looking for some trainers in the storeroom.

You are the shop detective and you are looking at your purse. You are kicking your purse into the storeroom.

You are locking the thieves in the storeroom.

You are a thief and you are banging on the storeroom door.

After you read Tick () the best summary.

- · Read the Reading tip to pupils.
- · Give pupils a minute to complete the activity.

Activity Book

After you read Complete the crossword.

Give pupils one minute to complete the activity. They compare answers with a partner.

Answer key 2 storeroom, 3 notice, 4 detective, 5 thief

Skills Lesson 11

Reading



Before you read What kind of text is it? an email

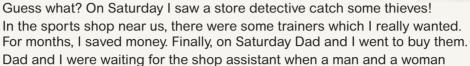




Listen and read.



Hi Ibrahim!



Dad and I were waiting for the shop assistant when a man and a woman came into the shop. We saw them put some expensive trainers into their bags before the shop assistant came out of the storeroom with the trainers for me. They were thieves!

I didn't know what to do. Then I noticed the woman nearby. She took out her purse, which had a lot of money in it. She opened her purse and counted the money loudly. The thieves watched her. Then she dropped her purse! As she walked away, she kicked it into the storeroom.

The thieves went straight into the storeroom to get the purse. Then the woman suddenly came back, quickly shut the storeroom door and shouted for help. It turned out the woman was a store detective! The police came and took the thieves away! Can you imagine?

From, Tarea

rarec

3 After you read Tick (✓) the best summary.

- a Tareq saved money to buy some trainers. In the sports shop he saw thieves stealing expensive trainers. The store detective caught the thieves. The police came and took the thieves away.
- **b** Tareq saved money to buy some trainers. In the sports shop he saw thieves stealing expensive trainers. The police came and took the thieves away.



A summary should mention all the important points in the story. Which summary does that?





fifty-six

Answer the questions.

- Pupils complete the activity individually.
- Extension (2) Write the following on the board: 1 Saturday 2 Tareq 3 Dad 4 sports shop 5 trainers 6 a man and a woman 7 woman 8 purse. Pupils turn to page 56 of their Pupil's Books. They change information on the board to make their own version of the story and then retell it in pairs. Monitor and help.

Answer key 2 Tareq wanted to buy some trainers.; 3 The thieves put expensive trainers into their bags.; 4 She dropped her purse and kicked it into the storeroom.; 5 She was a store detective.; 6 The police took them away.

Extra activity Fast finishers

 Pupils write ten favourite words from this lesson in their notebooks.

Finishing the lesson

• Susing the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask Did you like Tareq's email? Did you believe his story? What do you think about thieves? Would you like to be a story detective/shop assistant? Why?



Objectives

- Lesson aims: to understand a listening task; to talk about where you like to go shopping; to write an email to a friend about shops
- Target language: revision of vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Listening, Speaking, Writing

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group of pupils
- coloured pencils
- Resource 33

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can extract specific information in short texts on familiar topics (GSE 39).
- Listening: Can identify key information such as prices, times and dates in a short description, if supported by prompts or questions (GSE 35).
- Speaking: Can express likes and dislikes in relation to familiar topics in a basic way (GSE 29).
- Writing: Can write short, simple descriptive texts giving information about common shops and amenities in their town, using basic linking words/phrases and given a model (GSE 45).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Peer learning: pairwork; Two stars and a wish technique; aroupwork

Independent learning: Learning diary

Starting the lesson

4.7 Play the song from Lesson 7 and encourage pupils to join in and do the actions they learnt.



Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will listen to people talk about a shopping centre, talk about the shops they like and then write an email to a friend about the shops
- 🗐 Using the Basketball technique, ask pupils to name the shops they remember.

Practice

Pupil's Book

Listening



1 (a) 4.16 Listen and write.

- Refer pupils to page 57 and tell them to read the information before they listen so they know what to listen for.
- · Play the audio.



1 Man 1: Hi, everyone. Here we are in Westport and it's time to go shopping! I'll tell you about the different shops in Westport. Firstly, the main shopping street is High Street. On High Street, there is also an indoor market,

where you can buy clothes, pictures and shoes.

Girl: Can you buy food there? Man 1: Oh, yes! There are a lot of cafés, and also a

greengrocer's and a fishmonger's.

2 Man 1: In the city centre, there's also a big shopping centre. It's

called the Smith Centre.

How do you spell 'Smith'? Bou:

Man 1: S-M-I-T-H. Thank you! Bou:

3 Girl: Excuse me. I've got a headache. I have to find a

pharmacy and buy some medicine.

. I'm sorry you're not feeling well. There's a pharmacy Man 1:

at the shopping centre. I can take you there.

Girl:

Diversity

Challenge

• Ask What can you buy at the indoor market? Why does the girl want to find a pharmacy?

Support

• Write the questions above on the board for pupils to answer.

Speaking

Ask and answer where they like to go shopping.

- Pupils work in pairs.
- · When they have talked about shops, pupils change partners and repeat the activity.
- Ask different pupils to talk about their preferences. Ask for class feedback. Prompt with questions: Who likes going shopping in the market?

Writing

Read. What does Mariam like to buy from the greengrocer's?

- Give pupils a minute to read the text and find the answer.
- · Check comprehension with questions. Ask What's the name of the street she likes? (Jacinto Street) What can you buy at the shopping centre?(clothes and presents) What is her favourite shop?(the toy shop)

Extra activity TPR

• 🗐 Using the Happy/Sad face technique, pupils respond to your questions: Do you know how to write an email? Are you ready to write this email? Are you going to read the plan?

4 Write an email to a friend suggesting some shops to visit where you live.

· Read the Writing tip and read the plan to pupils. Pupils turn to their Activity Books.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils write a list of items that a lot of people buy online.





Speaking

በ 🏿 🚳 Listen and write.

Listening

Ask and answer where they like to go shopping.

Shopping in Westport Main shopping street: High Street

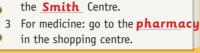
Where do you like to go shopping?

I like to go sports shop and





shopping in the the gift shop.







Writing

Read. What does Mariam like to buy from the greengrocer's? apples and pears

You asked for some advice about

On Rainbow Street there are a lot of great shops and there's also a market

where you can buy delicious food. There's a fishmonger's, a butcher's and

a greengrocer's at the market. I love the

apples and pears from the greengrocer's! There's a big shopping centre where you

can buy clothes and presents. There are

gift shops, a jeweller's, shoe shops and

Toys. My favourite shop is the toy shop,

a big toy shop which is called Happy

good places to shop in my city.

🕜 Write an email to a friend suggesting some shops to visit where you live.

Plan .

- · Which shops should he/she visit?
- · Are the shops at a shopping centre, at a market or on a
- What special things can he/she buy there?

2 Write

You asked for some advice about ...

At the market ...

At the shopping centre ...

I love ...

3 Check your work ✓

· Used an apostrophe correctly?

Writing

of course!

From Mariam

Hi Nour

We use an apostrophe after some shop names. That's because the greengrocer's is short for the greengrocer's shop = shop of the greengrocer.

Activity Book, page 51

fifty-seven

Activity Book

🚺 Look and write 's to the shop names where necessary. Answer key 2 fishmonger's, 4 greengrocer's, 5 newsagent's

Plan and write an email to a friend suggesting some shops to visit in your town.

- · Plan: Give pupils one minute to complete their notes.
- · Write: Pupils work individually to complete the email.
- Check your work: Write the following questions on the board: Did you use apostrophes correctly? Did you use a capital letter at the start of each sentence? Did you use a full stop at the end of each sentence? Did you use linking words? Did you use the correct spellings? Was your handwriting clear? Pupils evaluate their own work by answering the questions.
- 🕾 Using the Two stars and a wish technique, pupils read and check each other's work

Extra activity Creativity

• Rut pupils in groups. Ask them to make a shopping map of their town to display in the classroom. Have a class vote on the best map.

Extra activity Fast finishers

· Pupils find the shopping vocabulary and write the words down.

Finishing the lesson

Pupils write down what they achieved in their Learning diary: Today I listened to ..., I described ... and I wrote an email about Lesson 13

Objectives

- · Lesson aims: to review unit language
- · Target language: unit vocabulary
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Speaking

Materials

• eight word cards from Lesson 7

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 41).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).
- **Speaking:** Can describe common everyday objects using simple language (GSE 31). Can talk about everyday activities using simple language (GSE 32). Can ask a range of questions in guessing games to find the answer (GSE 36).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Ask pupils a key question about learning numbers, e.g. When will you need to ask for prices in English? Accept all reasonable answers.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will do revision of the unit vocabulary and then play a game.
- Revise the shops by saying what you can buy in a shop. Ask different pupils to write the names on the board: butcher's, corner shop, fishmonger's, gift shop, greengrocer's, jeweller's, newsagent's, pharmacy, phone shop, shoe shop, sports shop, toy shop.
- Write vocabulary connected to money and prices on the board with the first letter missing: buy, money box, purse, save, sell, spend,
- Say these sentences, but say beep instead of the relative clause. Pupils raise their hands to say the missing word. My friend is a person 'beep' likes going shopping. The shopping centre is the place 'beep' we often meet. The trainers in the sports shop are 'beep' he likes best.
- Revise have to and don't have to. Using the Lollipop stick technique, ask pupils to say one thing they have to or don't have to do at home.

Extra activity TPR

• Livide the class into two teams. Hide the word cards around the room. Call out a word/phrase and have two pupils (one from each team) search for the word. The pupil who finds the word card thinks of a sentence with the word to win his/her team a point.

Practice

Pupil's Book

- Sort the words. Write the words in your notebook.
 - Refer pupils to page 58. Pupils copy the table in their notebooks and complete it in pairs.
 - Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.
- 2 🧸 💭 Muneer, Rana, Aisha and Ramzi have to buy and sell some things. Describe what they have to and don't have to do. Your partner quesses.
 - Pupils work in the same pairs and complete the activity.
 - · Walk around the room monitoring pairs.

Extra activity Collaborative work

• Rlay a memory game. A pupil says I have to sell my bike. The next pupil adds something: I have to sell my bike and my books,

Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

- Divide the class into two teams. For large classes, divide the class into groups of eight and divide each group into two teams of four.
- · Give pupils two minutes to think of three extra questions.
- · Monitor the game and award points.

Activity Book

Read and circle in red the shops Zeinab will visit and in blue the things she will buy. Then write how much Zeinab will spend and save.

Answer key

Shops Zeinab will visit: toy shop, newsagent's Things Zeinab will buy: orange yo-yo, yellow pencil case, magazine Spend: 8.50 JD

Save: 6.50 JD

- You've got 15 JD. Look at Activity 1. Choose three things you want to buy. Write and say how much you are going to spend.
 - Pupils work individually. They read their partner's work.
 - Ask different pupils to read out their descriptions to each other in groups and compare.

Self-evaluation

· Pupils do the activity individually.

Extra practice

Circle the odd one out.

Answer key 2 medicine, 3 magazine, 4 TV

- Complete the sentences. Use who, which or where.
 - Answer key 2 where you can buy nice presents; 3 which I'm going to buy tomorrow; 4 who are from Agaba
- Read and complete for you. Use have to or don't have to. Then compare in pairs.
 - Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

Sort the words. Write the words in your notebook.

jeweller's pharmacy sports shop newsagent's butcher's corner shop fishmonger's gift shop

Shops where you can buy food	Shops where you can buy jewellery	Shops where you can buy medicine	Shops where you can buy something to wear
butcher's fishmonger's corner shop	jeweller's gift shop	pharmacy	sports shop gift shop
newsagent's			

2 Muneer, Rana, Aisha and Ramzi have to buy and sell some things. Describe what they have to and don't have to do. Your partner quesses.

	Muneer	Rana	Aisha	Ramzi
sell a bike	~	X	~	X
spend birthday money	×	✓	×	~
buy a new wallet	~	x	×	~
buy a new money box	×	~	~	X

He has to sell a bike. He doesn't have to spend his birthday money.



Challenge

Challenge your classmates and play the game!

Work in two teams. Look back through the unit to find the answers to these questions.

The shopper at the newsagent's.

- 1 Find a person who is holding a credit card. (1 point) (Lesson 1)
- 2 Find the name for a corner shop in New Zealand. (1 point) dairy (Lesson 9)
- 3 Say 14.53 JD in two different ways. (1 point) fourteen dinars and fifty-three plastres; fourteen fifty-three (Lesson 10) Now think of three more questions to ask the other team.



Vocabulary and Grammar reference

- Translate the words into your language in your notebook. Add more words to the list.
 - \bullet $\ \ \,$ Pupils can work in pairs to complete the activity.
- Read and complete.

Answer key 2 email, 3 where, 4 has to, 5 have to, 6 What, 7 Does, 8 don't, 9 does

Finishing the lesson

 Swrite on the board In Unit 4 I can ..., I am good at ..., I am not very good at Pupils complete the sentences with their own evaluation.

Next lesson Unit 4 Test and End-of-semester 1 test

Getready for...

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to practise for A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1, Speaking Part 4 and Listening Part 5
- Target language: unit vocabulary and grammar
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

coloured pencils

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- · Reading: Can understand basic sentences naming familiar everyday items, if supported by pictures (GSE 24).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can identify people in their immediate surroundings or in pictures from a short, simple description of where they are and what they are doing (GSE 30).
- Speaking: Can talk about everyday activities using simple language (GSE 34).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique Peer learning: Expert envoy technique; pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique

Starting the lesson

• Elicit the different shops from page 49 of Unit 4 and ask pupils to write the words correctly on the board. Say sentences and pupils say which shop it is. Say, e.g. This is a place where you can buy fruit and vegetables. This is a place where you can buy fish. This is a place where you can buy a football. This is a place where you can buy a comic.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will revise the work from the unit and practise for the A1 Movers exams.

Practice

Pupil's Book

A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1

🚺 🧞 🎯 Look and read. Choose the correct words and tell your partner.

- Tell pupils that this practises the A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1 exam.
- · Ask a volunteer to read the Exam tip aloud. Point out that there are eight pictures and five sentences.
- A Pupils read the sentences and choose their answers individually. Then they compare their answers with a partner.
- Theck answers as a class using the Lollipop stick technique. Pupils read out the sentences and their answers. Point out that number 2 could be purse or wallet.

Diversity

Challenge

• Once the pupils have finished, have them write definitions for the pictures not used in the activity.

• Read the sentences with the class. Ask pupils which they think are the key words and have them underline them.

A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

② O Let's talk about shopping. Answer the questions.

- This activity is based on the A1 Movers Speaking Part 4 exam.
- Ask two volunteers to read Activity 2. One person reads the question and the other says the answer.

Extra activity Collaborative work

• Divide the class into groups. Ask them to discuss what they liked about the unit using the Expert envoy technique. Pupils write their opinion about the unit under the lesson headings. The envoy reports back to the class.

Activity Book

A1 Movers Listening Part 5

- 1 Think! Tick (✔) the things and places you can see in the picture in Activity 2. Then say where they are.
 - Tell pupils that this activity practises the A1 Movers Listening Part 5 exam.
 - Check answers using the Lollipop stick technique.

Answer key 2 1, 3 1, 4 1, 7 1, 10 1, 12 1

2 Do! O 4.17 Listen, colour and write.

· Hand out coloured pencils and play the audio.

Can you colour this picture now? 1 Woman:

Yes, OK! It's a busy shopping day at the shopping Boy:

centre.

Woman: That's right. There's a girl who's buying some carrots at the greengrocer's. Colour the carrots.

Boy: Woman: You have to make them orange.

Woman: Now, I'd like you to colour the gift shop. Can you

Yes. It's the shop which is between the pharmacy Boy:

and the jeweller's.

That's right. Well ... you don't have to colour all

the shop. Colour only the present which is in the

window. Colour it green, please.

It's a big present! Boy:

Woman: Yes, it is!

3 Boy: Can I colour a wallet?

Woman: OK. Colour the wallet which the boy in the

pharmacy is holding. Can, I colour it red?

Boy: Woman: Yes, why not? Red is a nice colour.

Boy: Great!

Can I do some writing, too? Bou:

Yes, I'd like you to write the word 'Pharmacy'. Woman: Where? At the top of the pharmacy which is next to Boy:

the gift shop?

Yes, please. You have to be careful when writing the Woman:

word. Don't rush!

Boy:

Woman: You don't have to write anything else. Boy: OK, but can I colour something else?

Woman: Yes, of course. I'd like you to colour a pair of shoes.

Lesson 14 Get ready for...



A1 Movers Reading and Writing Part 1

Look and read. Choose the correct words and tell your partner.

Remember: you won't need all the pictures! But check each picture carefully to make sure you've got the right one.



1 This is a place where you can buy presents for your family and friends.

Number 1. Gift shop.

- 2 This is something which people use to carry their money.
- 3 This is something which you can save your money in.
- 4 This is a small shop on the street where you can buy a lot of different things.
- 5 You do this when you take your money to a shop and buy something with it.

A1 Movers Speaking Part 4

- ② @ Let's talk about shopping. Answer the questions.
 - How often do you go shopping?
 - · Who do you go shopping with?
- What shops do you like to go to?
- What kinds of things do you buy?

fifty-nine



The shoes which the boy in the shoe shop is trying Boy:

Woman: No, the big pair of shoes in the shoe shop window.

Can uou see them? Boy: Yes, they're big. Please colour them pink.

Woman: Bou: OK.

Boy:

5 Woman: And now, can you see the jeweller's? Colour the

money box which the girl is holding, please.

All right. Can I colour it yellow? Boy:

Woman: That's a nice colour, but I'd like you to colour it blue,

please. Blue then.

Woman: Thank you! Well done!

Answer key orange carrot, green present, red wallet, Pharmacy, pink shoes, blue money box

- Ask How did you get on in Unit 4? Which lesson did you like best? Which words were the easiest and most difficult?
- Using the Thought-provoking questions technique, ask pupils how successful their learning is so far and, on a scale of 1-5, have them rate how much they enjoyed this unit.
- · Congratulate pupils on completing the unit.

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to consolidate and extend vocabulary and grammar
- Target language: horse, turtle, monkey, parrot, kangaroo, rabbit; run, swim, jump, fly, climb, hop
- Skills: Speaking, Listening, Reading, Writing

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil
- stopwatch or timer

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Speaking: Can name everyday objects, animals or people around them or in pictures using single words (GSE 18). Can express ability or lack of ability in relation to basic everyday actions (GSE 31).
- Listening: Can identify key details (e.g. name, number) in factual talks on familiar topics, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 38).
- Reading: Can understand simple sentences, given prompts (GSE 24).
- Writing: Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16). Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32).

Mapping

Scope and Sequence Matrix

Theme 5: Welfare

Topic

Listening: asking and answering questions to seek help, get information, or clarify something

Speaking: taking turns in pair or group discussions; following rules for discussions (e.g. speaking one at a time about the topics under discussion)

Reading: segmenting long texts into smaller sections and reading one section at a time

Writing: using the writing process to write simple texts (e.g. short stories with pictures)

Viewing and presenting: journaling regularly

Learning Outcomes and Performance Indicators

Listening: respond to oral presentations, instructions or conversations through questions or statements; extract information from an oral text to do a task; identify the topic of oral texts

Speaking: maintain the conversation (keep it going); speak with less preparation and quidance from the teacher and more improvisation; segment long texts into smaller sections and read one section at a time

Reading: demonstrate understanding of message in stories, fables or lesson

Viewing and presenting: demonstrate how the words and pictures work together to convey a particular message

Starting the lesson

• Play Parachute with the vocabulary from Units 3 and 4.

Presentation

Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn vocabulary related to animals and how they move. They will also learn comparative adverbs and superlative adjectives.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🖸 How many animals can you say? Which of them can ...

- Set a timer to one minute and have pupils say as many animals as possible. Go around the class and count as they say them and write them on the board. Then say the total number the class as a whole has said.
- Then using the list of animals on the board, ask What can a (lion) do? Pupils answer, e.g. A lion can run, swim and climb. Continue with all the animals on the board.

2 🮧 LC2.1 Read and say. Listen and number.

- · Ask pupils to look at the words and photos. Read the words aloud and pupils repeat as they hear them. Read the words again but this time, not in the order on the page. Pupils repeat.
- · Play the audio and pupils number the photos. Play the audio a second time if necessary.



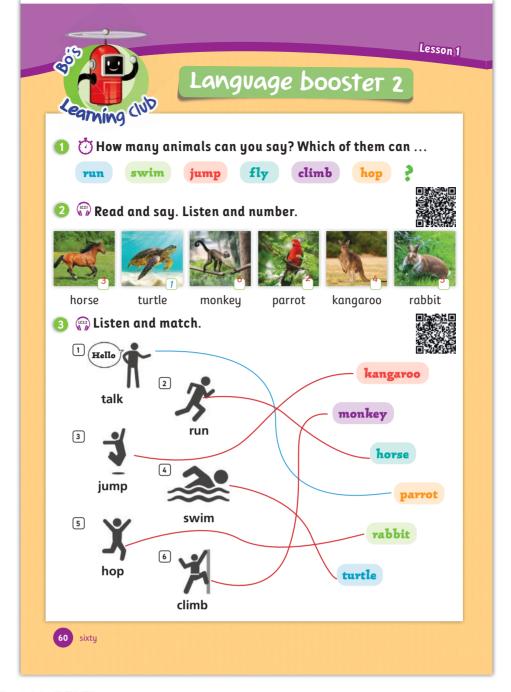
- In pairs, pupils describe one of the animals from Activity 2 for their partner to guess what animal it is, e.g. This animal has got two legs. It can jump and run. It's brown. It eats grass. (kangaroo)
- It's a turtle.
- 2 It's a parrot.
- It's a horse.
- It's a kangaroo.
- It's a rabbit.
- It's a monkey

C2.2 Listen and match.

- · Ask pupils to look at the pictures in Activity 3. Say an action word and have pupils mime it to reinforce the vocabulary.
- Play the audio. Pupils listen and draw lines to the correct animal. Play the audio again if necessary.
- Extension Pupils close their books. Elicit the names of the animals on page 60 and write them on the board. Have pupils choose one and say how it moves and what it can do.
- This bird can talk loudly. It's a parrot.
- This animal can jump easily. It's a kangaroo.
- This animal can climb carefully. It's a monkey.
- This animal can swim slowly. It's a turtle.
- This animal can hop quietly. It's a rabbit.
- This animal can run quickly. It's a horse.







Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils write six columns on a sheet of A4 paper with the headings: talk, run, jump, swim, hop, climb. They complete the columns with animals that can do these movements. Point out they can repeat animals in the different columns. For example, they can write horse under run, jump and swim.

Activity Book

1 Look and write.

- Ask pupils to look at the words in the box. Ask a pupil to read them aloud.
- Pupils complete the activity individually, writing the words from the box under the correct picture.
- · Check as a class.

Answer key 2 horse, 3 kangaroo, 4 turtle, 5 monkey, 6 rabbit

Diversity

Challenge

En pairs, pupils practise spelling the words in Activity 1.
 One person spells an animal and the other says what it is.
 They can also say one thing that animal can do.

Support

 Review the animals again. Pupils write down the animals in their notebooks. They can illustrate them to show the meaning.

Read and circle the correct answer.

- Write slowly, quickly, quietly, loudly, carefully and easily on the board. Explain these are adverbs and are used to describe how something is done. Give an example: walk to the door slowly and then walk to the door quickly.
- Ask pupils to complete the activity individually. Check answers in pairs. Then ask pupils to read out the correct complete sentences.

Answer key 1 a, 2 b, 3 b, 4 a, 5 a, 6 a

Complete the sentences.

- Ask pupils to look at Activity 3. Tell pupils they take one word from each box to complete each sentence. Make sure pupils know what to do.
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Put pupils in groups and have them read out their sentences.

Answer key (possible answers) 2 A parrot flies easily/quickly.; 3 A turtle swims slowly/carefully.; 4 A monkey climbs easily/quickly/carefully.; 5 A rabbit hops quietly.; 6 A horse jumps easily.

- Susing the Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they think about what they have learnt today.
- Have pupils say the best thing about today's lesson. Encourage them to use The best thing today was

Language booster 2

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to consolidate and extend vocabulary and grammar to say and write sentences with comparative adverbs and superlative adjectives
- **Target language**: horse, turtle, monkey, parrot, kangaroo, rabbit; run, swim, jump, fly, climb, hop
- Skills: Reading, Speaking, Writing, Listening

Materials

sheets of A4 paper, enough for each pupil

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can understand simple sentences, given prompts (GSE 24).
- Speaking: Can give simple reasons to explain preferences, given a model (GSE 35). Can make simple, direct comparisons between two people or things using common adjectives, given a model (GSE 38).
- Writing: Can write simple sentences about their likes or dislikes in relation to familiar topics (e.g. food), given prompts or a model (GSE 30). Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32)
- Listening: Can identify key details (e.g. name, number) in factual talks on familiar topics, if spoken slowly and clearly (GSE 38).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Review the animals and movements from the previous lesson. Ask pupils to come to the front to mime an animal. The class quesses what it is.

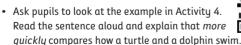
Presentation

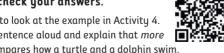
Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn more vocabulary related to animals and how they move. They will also learn comparative and superlative adverbs.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🛂 🎧 LC2.3 Read and write True or False. Listen and check your answers.





- · Play the audio and pupils check their answers. Have pupils correct the false sentences.
- True or False? A turtle swims more quickly than a dolphin. It's False. A turtle swims more slowly than a dolphin.
- True or False? A rabbit hops more easily than a panda. It's True.
- True or False? A parrot talks more quietly than a frog. It's False. A parrot talks more loudly than a frog.

Diversity

Challenge

- Write prompts on the board: bear/swim/more slowly/dolphin; kangaroo/jump/more easily/tiger; lion/run/more quickly/panda; parrot/talk/more loudly/frog.
- In pairs, pupils take turns to say sentences, e.g. A bear can swim more slowly than a dolphin.

• Review how different animals do things before doing Activity 4. Elicit sentences from pupils and write them on the board. Pupils copy them into their notebooks. Write, e.g. A dolphin swims quickly. A rabbit hops easily. A parrot talks loudly. A monkey climbs easilu.

🟮 💭 Think of animals you know. Make true sentences.

- \(\int \text{LC2.4}\) Tell pupils to look at the grammar box. Play the audio and ask pupils to repeat.
- · Ask a pupil to read the speech bubble. Ask Is this true? (Yes)
- Pupils work in groups and say true sentences. Help pupils where necessary with their sentences.

Read the sentences. Tick () the correct animal.

- Pupils look at the photos at the top of the table (a turtle, shark, octopus). Say They are all quick. Which animal is the quickest? Pupils tick the correct photo.
- Pupils work individually to complete the rest of the activity. Check

🚺 🧘 💭 Talk in pairs. Which animal do you like best?

- C2.5 Play the audio and pupils repeat the
- Pupils look at the speech bubbles in Activity 4. Ask two volunteers to read them aloud.
- In pairs, pupils take turns to say sentences about the animals on pages 60 and 61. Monitor pupils are using the structure correctly.

Show what you know

- Rearning Club pages. Pupils answer the questions in pairs.
- · Then they read and complete the Bo Reflection Box individually.

Activity Book

4) Read and circle the correct answer.

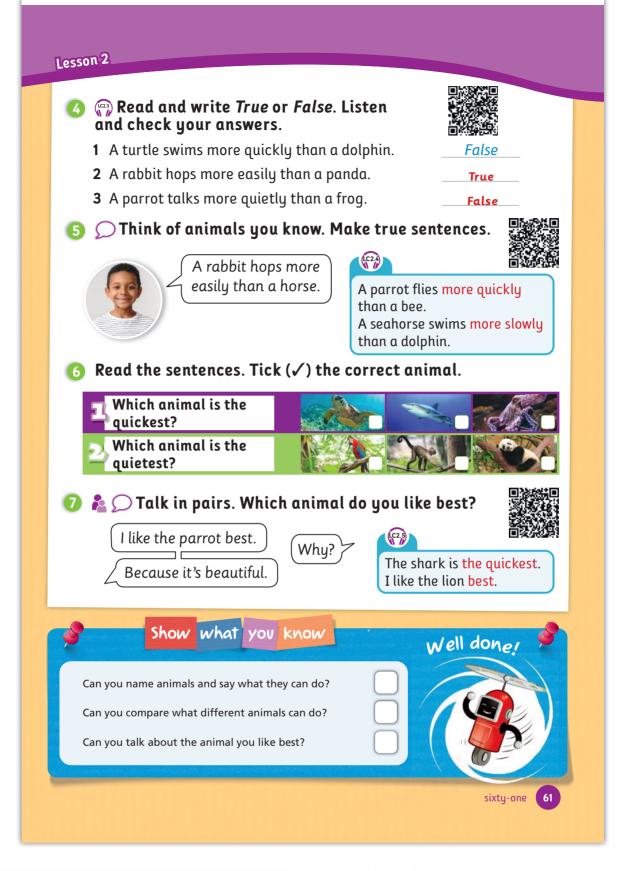
- Pupils look at Activity 4. Read out the animals and ask pupils to say one thing about them.
- Pupils complete the activity individually. Check answers by having pupils read out the complete sentences. Use the Lollipop stick technique.
- Extension Have pupils swap the animals in each sentence and say the new sentences, e.g. A panda runs more slowly than a lion.

Answer key 2 more slowly, 3 more quietly, 4 more easily, 5 more carefully

Read and write the animal.

- · Read the words in the boxes and check pupils understand what theu are.
- Pupils work in pairs and complete the activity. One reads the sentence and the other chooses the answer.
- Elicit the opposite superlative for each item and write them on the board. Pupils re-do the activity with the new superlatives. (1 the quickest – a shark, 2 the quietest – a butterfly, 3 the slowest - a tortoise, 4 the loudest - a lion)

Answer key 1 seahorse, 2 parrot, 3 lion, 4 panda



6 * Draw, write and share about the animal you like best.

- Brainstorm the animals from the two lessons and write them on the board.
- Pupils choose one and draw and write about the animal they like best.
- R In pairs, they show each other their work.
- Extension Ask a pupil to come to the front of the class. The rest of the class asks questions to guess which animal the pupil has drawn and written about (e.g. Does your animal live in the sea? Does your animal live on land? Can it fly? Can it fly more quickly than a ...?).

- Hand out A4 paper. Pupils divide each sheet into six and draw the animals from page 84. They colour and cut them out. Pupils then choose four animals and play animal bingo. When pupils hear their animal they turn it over. The winner is the first one to turn over all the animals.
- Susing the Summative questions technique, ask pupils what they think about what they learnt today.

Howcanplants keep us healthy?

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn about how plants keep us healthy
- Target language: carbohydrates, minerals, proteins, source, spinach, vitamins, wheat
- · Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- English learners' dictionaries / online access to English learners' dictionary
- · sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group of pupils
- Yes/No response cards
- Resource 34

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41).

Assessment for Learning

- Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique
- Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique; Yes / No response cards
- Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork
- Independent learning: Thought-provoking questions technique; Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

 Write Plants we eat on the board. Ask pupils to raise their hands and name any plants they know that we eat. Tell pupils they will learn about different plants and what is in them.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about how plants keep us healthu
- Pre-teach these words. Write them on the board one at a time with definitions: carbohydrates: these are in potatoes and pasta and they give us energy minerals: these are in food that keeps us healthy, like iron in greens proteins: these are in food like beans and they are good for our bodies source: this is where something comes from spinach: this is a green leaf plant – the one Popeye likes vitamins: these are in food that keeps us healthy, like vitamin C in oranges wheat: this is a grain we use to make bread
- · Read out the definitions and explain if necessary.

Practice

Pupil's Book

1 Think What do you know about keeping healthy?

- Refer pupils to page 62. Read the question. Pupils discuss for one minute in groups of four. They then raise their hands to offer ideas to the class.
- Extension Internet search key words: kids health healthy eating

2 Learn 🞧 LC2.6 Listen and read.

 Before pupils read, draw their attention to the photos. Read out the words, have pupils point to the correct photo and repeat. Explain meanings if necessary.



- · Play the audio.
- Check comprehension with questions: What is in peas and beans? (proteins) What is in apples, oranges and spinach? (vitamins and minerals) What is in pasta, bread and potatoes? (carbohydrates)

Diversity

Challenge

 Ask pupils thought-provoking questions, e.g. Do you understand what the text is about? Do you need to understand all the words to do this? Are there any new words in the text? Can you work out what they mean from the sentence they are in? If not, where can you find their meanings?

Support

Tell pupils not to worry about understanding all the words in a text
if they can understand the general idea. But remind them to learn
key words. Ask pupils to write the words in bold in the text in their
notebooks. Add translations to the definitions on the board for
pupils to copy.

ᢃ Check 🦺 Write words from the text.

 Pupils work individually to complete the activity. They then compare answers in pairs. Ask for feedback from pairs, using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in groups of four. Hand a sheet of A4 paper to each group. They write three more definitions for words in the text. They can use a dictionary to do this. They swap work with another group and find each other's words.

Extra activity TPR

• Susing their Yes/No response cards, pupils answer these questions and others you might want to add:

Does spinach have minerals?

Do plants keep us healthy?

Do we use potatoes to make pasta?

Are there carbohydrates in bread?

Is wheat a green vegetable?

Did you learn some new words today?

Do you like spinach?

Do you eat a lot of fruit and vegetables?

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Have pupils find the plant words in the text and write the words in their notebook.

- Erase the definitions of the new words from the board. Have pupils raise their hands to say a definition for each word.
- Susing the Summative questions technique, ask What new information did you learn in this lesson?



When we're hurt.

proteins

5 This vegetable gives us vitamins and minerals.

spinach

62 sixty-two

Howcanplants keep us healthy?

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn about food groups
- Target language: fats
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Speaking

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper/paper plates, enough for each group
- coloured pencils
- pictures or printouts of different foods for each group

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20).
- Speaking: Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Write Oranges and spinach on the board. Ask What things are in oranges and spinach that keep us healthy? Elicit vitamins and
- Write wheat and then beans on the board and ask the same question. Elicit the answers carbohydrates and proteins.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about another group in the food groups
- · Write Fats on the board. Ask pupils if they know what it means. If not, explain the meaning. Pupils could look up fats online if available.
- Extension Internet search key words: fats in plants we eat

Practice

Pupil's Book

- Let's practise! Look at these four groups of food. Think! Write the two words that go into the 'fats' group.
 - Refer pupils to page 63. Read the question and the different foods to pupils. Explain meanings if necessary.
 - Pupils discuss in pairs. Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Diversity

Challenge

· Pupils say other foods for each group.

Support

• Call out other words and ask pupils which group they go in.

Read and check. Were you right?

- Pupils read the text individually.
- Rsk for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

Show what you know

A Make a healthy food plate with four types of food.

- Place pupils in groups to complete the activity. Hand each group a sheet of A4 paper/paper plate, coloured pencils and pictures.
- Display the food plates. Ask pupils to look at each other's work and vote for their favourite one.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• & Pupils read a fact file from another group and write questions like those in Activity 2 for the fact file. They hand the questions to another group to answer.

Extra activity TPR

• Call out the names of the different foods in this lesson. Pupils hold up their left hand for food from plants and their right hand for food from other sources.

Extra activity Fast finishers

• Have pupils write in their notebooks three things they learnt that they didn't know before these lessons.

Finishing the lesson

- Pupils close their books. Draw a spidergram on the board with the body titled Plants. Draw four different circles titled Fats, Proteins, Carbohydrates and Vitamins/Minerals. Have different pupils go to the board and write one food word each from the previous lessons in the correct circles.
- Summative questions technique, ask Did you remember what each food is a source of? Are you going to eat more plants? Why?

Extra activity Progress path

Teacher's Book pages 148 (Pupil's Book) and 149 (Activity Book)

- Pupils work in pairs through the questions from Unit 3 to Unit 4 in the Pupil's Book (page 68) and/or the Activity Book (page 67).
- Depending on the amount of time you have, pupils could work through the Progress paths for both Pupil's Book and Activity Book unit-by-unit in class, or do the Pupil's Book one in class and the Activity Book one for homework.
- After completing the Unit 3 question(s), pupils can complete Challenge 1 in the Pupil's Book with their partner. Tell pupils they should try to complete the challenge in less than one minute.
- After completing the Unit 4 question(s), pupils can complete Challenge 2 in the Pupil's Book with their partner. Tell pupils they should try to complete the challenge in less than one minute.

Pupil's Book answer key Unit 3: a million; pupils' own answers; Unit 4: greengrocer's, toy shop, fishmonger's, butcher's; pupils' own answers; Challenge 1: planet; Challenge 2: pupils' own answers Activity Book answer key Unit 3: spacesuit; pupils' own answers; Unit 4: False; Mum went to the fishmonger's to buy fish.



sixty-three 63

Harvest Festival

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn about Harvest Festival
- Target language: harvest, grateful, tins, community, field, full moon
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

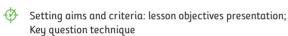
Materials

- · sheets of A3 paper/card, enough for each group of pupils
- · coloured pencils
- a box or basket for each group
- · things to decorate the box, e.g. ribbons, tissue paper
- · fruit, vegetables and food/photos of food
- Yes/No response cards

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38). Can understand simple sentences, given prompts (GSE 24). Can guess the meaning of unknown words by linking them to words they already know (GSE 44).
- Writing: Can write some familiar words (GSE 20). Can create a poster to advertise an event or product, given a model (GSE 45).
- Listening: Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can talk about basic personal experiences, using simple linking words (GSE 37).

Assessment for Learning



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique; Yes/No response cards technique

Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork

Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

- Write Fruit and Vegetables on the board. Ask different pupils to write the words they know on the board.
- Write Harvest Festival on the board. Say Harvest is when the food on farms is ready and we collect it to eat. Ask What's the connection between fruit and vegetables and Harvest Festival?

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about a festival that takes place in autumn called Harvest Festival.
- Write tins, grateful and community on the board. Explain the meanings:

You can buy fresh fruit and vegetables, but you can also buy them in metal tins. Do you like food in tins?

When someone cooks you a nice meal, you are happy, aren't you? You say 'thank you' because you are grateful.

Your community is everyone who lives in your town or near you.

• A Harvest Festival is a festival for the whole community. A lot of schools around the world have a Harvest Festival.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚺 🎧 F1.1 Listen and read.





- · Play the audio.
- Check comprehension with questions. Ask What does Diya usually bring? (a big bag of apples) Where does she get the apples from? (a tree in her garden) Is this one of Diya's favourite festivals? (yes) Do you like her poem? Why / Why not?

Diversity

Challenge

 Ask pupils thought-provoking questions, e.g. Do you understand what the text is about? Do you need to understand all the words to do this? Are there any new words in the text? Can you work out what they mean from the sentence they are in? If not, where can you find their meaning?

Support

Tell pupils not to worry about understanding all the words in a text
if they can understand the general idea, but remind them to learn
key words. Ask pupils to write the words in bold in the text in their
notebooks. Write definitions or translations on the board for pupils
to copy.

Answer the questions.

 Pupils work individually, then compare answers. Ask for feedback from pairs using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

 Pupils work in groups of four. Hand a sheet of A3 paper to each group. They write three more questions based on the text. They swap work with another group and answer each other's questions.

Do you celebrate a harvest? What do you do?

- Pupils discuss in pairs. Then have pupils raise their hands to offer ideas. If pupils don't celebrate a harvest, or to promote class discussion, ask What do you think of the idea of a Harvest Festival? What food would you like to share with your community? Who do you think you could share food with?
- Extension Internet search key words: Harvest Festival

🙆 🎎 🗰 Make a Harvest Festival basket.

- Place pupils in groups.
- Hand groups all the materials they need.
- Display the baskets and have pupils talk about what they can see and like.
- Extension Internet search key words: Harvest Festival basket images



Extra activity TPR

• Using their Yes/No response cards, pupils answer these questions and any others you might want to add:
Is Harvest Festival in September/November?
Can you bring food/clothes from your garden/shops?
Does Diya usually bring apples/bananas/tins?
Is Harvest Festival Diya's favourite festival?
Is the moon at Harvest Festival time called a Harvest Moon/Festival Moon?
Does Diya talk about fields/shops/sharing in her poem?

My name's Diya! Harvest Festival is one of my favourite festivals!

Harvest Festival

🚺 🕼 Listen and read.



arvest Festival is every year in September in India. Now we celebrate it in Jordan. At Harvest Festival, we celebrate because the **harvest** is finished and we are **grateful** that we have food on our tables. Everyone usually brings some food to school: it can be food from your garden or it can be food from a shop. In our garden we have an apple tree, so I usually bring a big bag of apples to school. Other people bring tins of food. Then we share the food with people in our **community**.





by Diya

Harvest our food from the fields. Bring our food to our tables. Share our food with others. This is our Harvest Festival!



- 1 in September
- 2 Because they are grateful that they have food on their tables.
- 3 food from their garden or a shop
- 4 They share it with people in their community.



The full moon at Harvest Festival time is called a Harvest Moon!



- 1 When is Harvest Festival?
- 2 Why does Diya's school celebrate Harvest Festival?
- 3 What do children bring to school?
- 4 What do they do with the
- 📵 Do you celebrate a harvest? What do you do?
- sixty-four





- 1 In groups, plan what to put in your Harvest Festival basket.
- 2 Find a box or basket and decorate it.
- 3 Bring fruits, vegetables and other food to school. If you can't bring real food, find photos.
- 4 Share the food with your classmates!

Activity Book

- After you read Read and match.
 - Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique. Answer key 2 grateful, f; 3 tins, e; 4 full moon, c; 5 field, a; 6 community, b
- Complete the sentences with the words in Activity 1.
 - · Have pupils raise their hands to offer answers.

Answer key 2 grateful, 3 tins, 4 community, 5 full moon, 6 field

🗿 🚵 🌟 Make a Harvest Festival poster. Include a poem and the things to bring.

- Put pupils into groups of four. Give them materials.
- Give pupils time to write a poem. Encourage them to use the language from the lesson.
- · Display the posters. Pupils discuss them.

Finishing the lesson

Summative questions technique, ask What new information did you learn in this lesson? Did you enjoy making a Harvest Festival basket?

World Water Day

Objectives

- Lesson aims: to learn about World Water Day
- Target language: important, running water, raise money, sale, decorations, charity
- Skills: Reading, Writing, Listening, Speaking

Materials

- sheets of A4 paper, enough for each group of pupils, or whiteboard and whiteboard software and computers
- coloured pencils/whiteboard markers
- Yes/No response cards

Global Scale of English (GSE)

- Reading: Can get the gist of short, simple texts on familiar topics, if supported by pictures (GSE 33). Can scan a simple text to find specific information (GSE 38).
- Writing: Can label simple pictures related to familiar topics by copying single words (GSE 16). Can write simple sentences about familiar things, given prompts or a model (GSE 32). Can create a poster to advertise an event or product, given a model (GSE 45).
- **Listening:** Can follow the sequence of events in a simple story or narrative, if told slowly and clearly (GSE 36).
- Speaking: Can express their opinions on familiar topics, using simple language (GSE 41). Can make suggestions about what to do, using a few basic fixed expressions (e.g. Let's, Why don't we ...?) (GSE 42).

Assessment for Learning



Setting aims and criteria: lesson objectives presentation; Key question technique



Monitoring pupils' learning: Lollipop stick technique; Yes/No response cards technique



Peer learning: pairwork; groupwork



😭 Independent learning: Summative questions technique

Starting the lesson

Write Water on the board. Ask pupils to raise their hands and say words that they connect to water. Accept all reasonable suggestions.

Presentation

- Explain that in this lesson pupils will learn about a day called World Water Day. Write World Water Day on the board. Have a class vote for the month they think this day is celebrated in.
- Pre-teach the words important, running water, raise money, sale, decorations and charity. Write the words on the board. Explain the meanings by asking pupils to find the word:

These are colourful things you hang up for a party.

This is water that comes from a tap.

This is an organisation that helps people.

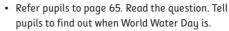
This means something makes a difference.

This is when you sell a product in exchange for money.

Practice

Pupil's Book

🚹 🮧 F2.1 Listen and read.







· Check comprehension with questions. Ask When is World Water Day? (22 March) How many people don't have running water? (millions) What did Farid and his classmates make this year? (posters)

Diversity

Challenge

• 🥽 Ask pupils thought-provoking questions, e.g. Do you understand what the text is about? Do you need to understand all the words to do this? Are there any new words in the text? Can you work out what they mean from the sentence they are in? If not, where can you find their meanings?

Support

• Tell pupils not to worry about understanding all the words in a text if they can understand the general idea, but remind them to learn key words. Ask pupils to write the words in bold in the text in their notebooks. Write definitions or translations on the board for pupils to copy.

Finish the sentences.

• 🗐 🕾 Pupils work individually to complete the activity. They then compare answers in pairs. Ask for feedback from pairs using the Lollipop stick technique.

Extra activity Critical thinking

• Pupils work in groups of four. Hand a sheet of A4 paper to each group. They write three more unfinished sentences based on the text. They swap work with another group and complete each other's sentences.

What can you do on World Water Day?

- Pupils discuss in pairs. Then have pupils raise their hands to offer ideas. To promote class discussion, ask Do you agree? What else could you sell? What costumes can you wear? What would you put on posters?
- Extension Internet search key words: World Water Day

🛂 🏰 💥 Make a whiteboard presentation about saving water.





- · Hand groups all the materials they need and/ or organise them depending on how they will do the presentation (paper on the board, drawings on the board or projection on the board).
- · Have groups present their work to the class. Make sure all pupils in each group say something.
- **Extension** Internet search key words: how to save water

Extra activity TPR

• Susing their Yes/No response cards, pupils answer these questions and any others you might want to add: Is World Water Day in September/March? Did Farid's school make posters/whiteboard presentations? Did they sell biscuits/cakes/ milk bottles/water bottles? Did they all wear red/blue? Did they raise money?

Hello, I'm Farid! I think World Water Day is really important!

World Water Day

1 (F2) Listen and read.



n World Water Day, we think about water and how **important** it is. In Jordan, most people have clean **running water**, but millions of people all over the world don't have any. At our school, we **raise money** on World Water Day to help more people get clean water.

This year, we made posters about how you can save water, and put them around the school. Then we all dressed up in blue. We had a cake **sale**. We sold cakes with blue **decorations**. We sold water bottles that you can use again and again. In one day, we raised over 200 dinars! We sent the money to a **charity** that helps people get clean water.



- 1 World Water Day is on the 22nd of March 4
- 2 Many people in the world don't have clean running.water
- **3** At Farid's school on World Water Day, they raise money to help people get clean water
- 4 They sold blue cakes and water bottles you can use again and again
- 5 They raised over 200 dinars
- What can you do on World Water Day?



- In groups, think of three ways you can save water.
- 2 Draw and write about them.
- **3** Present your ideas to the class.

sixty-five



Activity Book

- After you read Match the pictures and write.
 - Ask for feedback using the Lollipop stick technique.

 Answer key 2 sale, 3 running water, 4 decorations
- 2 Tick (✔) the things pupils did at Farid's school on World Water Day.
 - Pupils work individually and check in pairs.

 Answer key made posters, dressed up in blue, had a cake sale, used blue decorations for the cakes, raised money

3 A H In groups, make posters for World Water Day. Display them in school.

- ullet Divide pupils into groups of four.
- Hand each group the materials they need.
- Give pupils time to design their posters. Encourage them to use language from the lesson.
- Display the posters for other pupils to see.
- Ask feedback questions about the posters, e.g. Which posters do you like best? What's the same about the posters? What's different?

Finishing the lesson

 Susing the Summative questions technique, ask What new information did you learn in this lesson? Did you enjoy making a whiteboard presentation?

Solveit



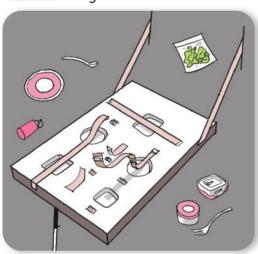
Unit 1 Pages 10–11



Unit 2 Pages 22–23



Unit 3 Pages 38-39



Unit 4 Pages 50–51



66 sixty-six

Grammar reference

Unit 1

My mum is shorter than me.

She's the shortest person in our family!

I'm **more** hard-working than my best friend.

I'm the **most** hard-working person in the class!

I'm good at baking cakes.

I'm not very good at making pizza.

Katie is great at acting.

Harry's terrible at juggling!

Unit 2

Was everything very different ten years ago?

That computer was really big!

Did you have a phone ten years ago?

Yes, we did! We had a phone in the house, but we didn't have a mobile phone.

When I was one, I could walk but I couldn't talk.

Could you talk when you were two?

Yes, I could. / No, I couldn't.

Unit 3

It's Jack's graduation tomorrow. I'll get him a present later.

What will you get him? What about a book on space?

No, I won't get him a book. I think I'll get him a game.

How deep is the Grand Canyon? It's 1,800 metres deep.

Unit 4

It's the man who we saw earlier. (person)

That's the phone case which my mum wants. (thing)

We're in the shop where my brother works. (place)

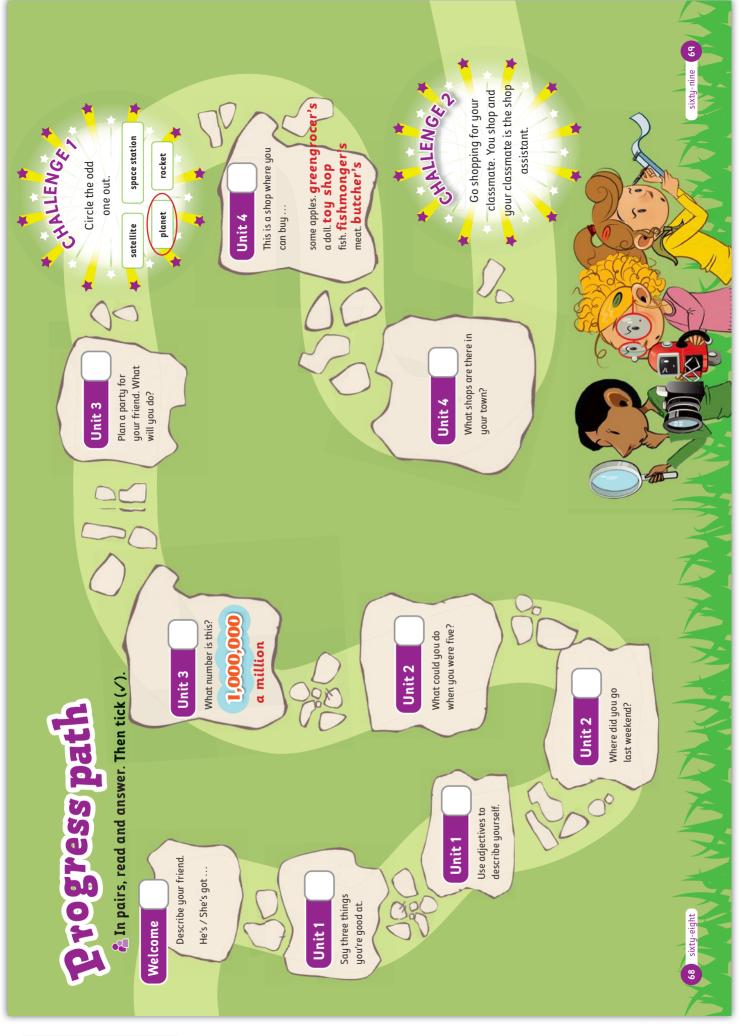
I have to / He has to save some money!

I don't have to / He doesn't have to buy it now.

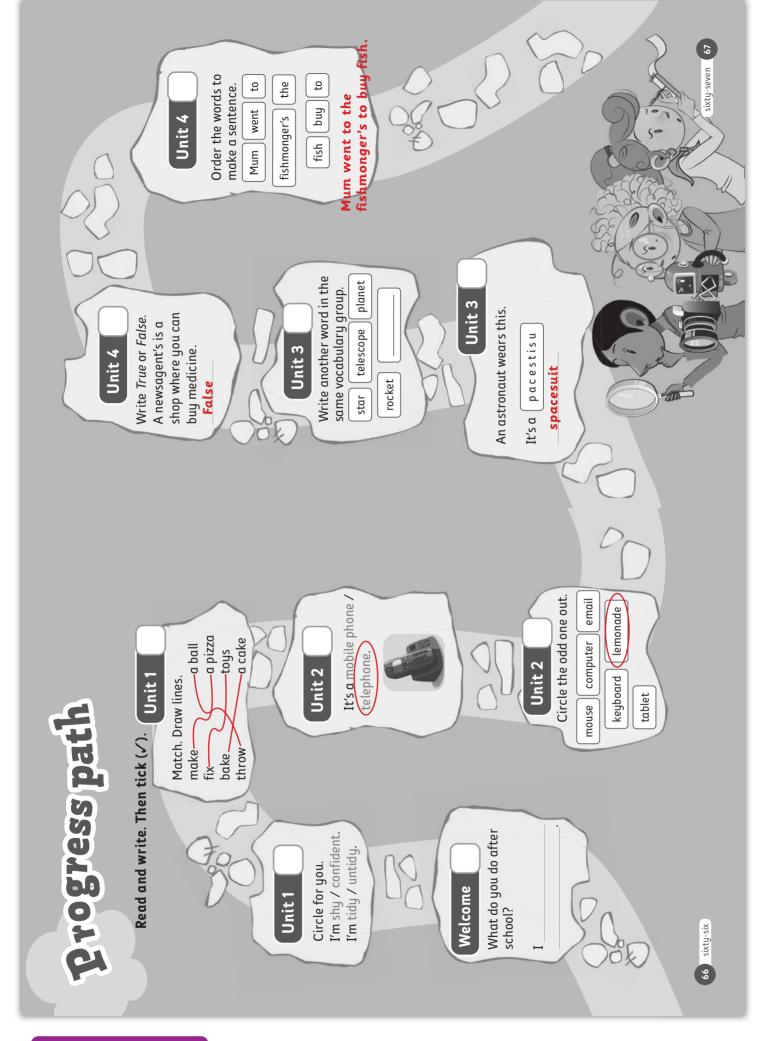
Do you have to buy that boat? Yes, I do. / No, I don't.

Does he have to buy that boat? Yes, he does. / No, he doesn't.

sixty-seven



Pupil's Book Progress path



Activity Book Progress path

Glossary

Welcome Unit 2 telescope - /'teliskəup/ ten - /ten/ basketball - /'baskitbal/ call - /kɔːl/ thousand – /ˈθaʊzənd/ beard - /brad/ carry - /ˈkæri/ club - /klnb/ computer - /kəm'pju:tə/ curly - /'kaxli/ describe - /dɪˈskraɪb/ birthday - /ˈbɜːθdeɪ/ dark - /daːk/ description - /di'skrip(n/ butcher's - /'bot[.əz/ fair - /feə/ email - /'izmeɪl/ buy - /bai/ football - /ˈfʊtbɔːl/ face - /feis/ corner shop - /ˈkɔː.nə ʃɒp/ hold - /həʊld/ **qo** − /qəʊ/ encourage - /In'kArIdz/ inform - /ɪnˈfɔːm/ granny - /ˈgræni/ encouragement - /in'knridzmant/ hair - /heə/ information - /,Infə'meI[n/ fishmonger's - /'fɪʃˌmʌŋ.gərz/ lesson - /'lesən/ keyboard - /ˈkiːbɔːd/ qift - /qɪft/ long - /lon/ letter - /'letə/ qreengrocer's - /'griɪŋ.grəʊ.səz/ moustache - /mʊˈstaː[/ make - /meik/ jeweller's - /'dzuz.ə.ləz/ play - /plei/ mobile phone - /'məʊbaɪl fəʊn/ money - /'mʌni/ mouse - /maʊs/ science - /saɪəns/ money box - /'mʌni bɒks/ short - /fort/ pen - /pen/ newsagent's - /'njuzz,ei.dzənts/ straight - /streit/ post - /paust/ pay - /pei/ swimming - /'swimin/ race - /reis/ payment - /'permant/ sandwich - /'sænwid3/ tennis - /'tenis/ pharmacy - /'fax.mə.si/ visit - /'vɪzɪt/ send - /send/ phone shop - /fəʊn [pp/ shoelace - /'furlers/ Unit 1 purse - /pass/ smartwatch - /'smairtwaitf/ save - /seiv/ bake - /beik/ story - /'starri/ hall - /boxl/ sell - /sel/ study - /'stʌdi/ shoe shop - / fur fop/ cake - /keik/ tablet - /'tæblət/ cheerful - /'t[ɪəfl/ spend - /spend/ telephone - /'telɪfəʊn/ confident - /'kpnfident/ sports shop - /sports [pp/ tell - /tel/ count - /kaunt/ toy - /tɔɪ/ tie - /taɪ/ toy shop - /toi [pp/ experiment - /ik'speriment/ win -/win/ wallet - /'wplit/ fix - /fiks/ Bo's Learning Club 1 friendly - /'frendli/ Bo's Learning Club 2 build - /bild/ hard-working - / hard wsrkin/ climb - /klaɪm/ museum – /mjuˈziːəm/ juggle - /'dz/gl/ hop - /hpp/ /taduer/ - todor kind - /kaind/ horse - /hors/ rocket - /'rokit/ lazy - /'leɪzi/ jump - /dʒʌmp/ make - /meik/ Unit 3 kangaroo - /ˌkæŋ.gər'uː/ pizza – /'piztsə/ astronaut - /'æs.trə.nɔːt/ monkey - /'mʌŋki/ polite - /pəˈlaɪt/ parrot - /'pærət/ comet - /'kpmit/ quiet - /kwarət/ quickly - / kwikli/ Earth $-/3:\theta/$ rude - /ruːd/ explorer - /ık'splɔːrə/ rabbit - /'ræbīt/ **shy** - /[aɪ/ run - /rʌn/ fifty - /'fɪfti/ spell - /spel/ slowly - /'sləʊli/ five - /faiv/ throw $-/\theta r \partial \sigma /$ hundred - /'hʌndrəd/ swim - /swim/ tidy – /ˈtaɪdi/ talk - /tɔːk/ million - /'mɪljən/ toy - /toɪ/ turtle - /ˈtɜːtl/ Moon - /muin/ unfriendly - / \(\text{\sigma} \) frendli/ planet - /'plænɪt/ unhappy - / \n'hæpi/ satellite - /'sæt.əl.aɪt/ unlucky - /An'lAki/ scientist - /'saɪəntɪst/

solar system - /'səvlə sistəm/

space station - /'speis istei[n/

spacesuit - /'speis.suit/

star - /sta:/
Sun - /s\n/

unsafe - /\n'seif/

untidy – /ʌnˈtaɪdi/

unwell - / \n'wel/



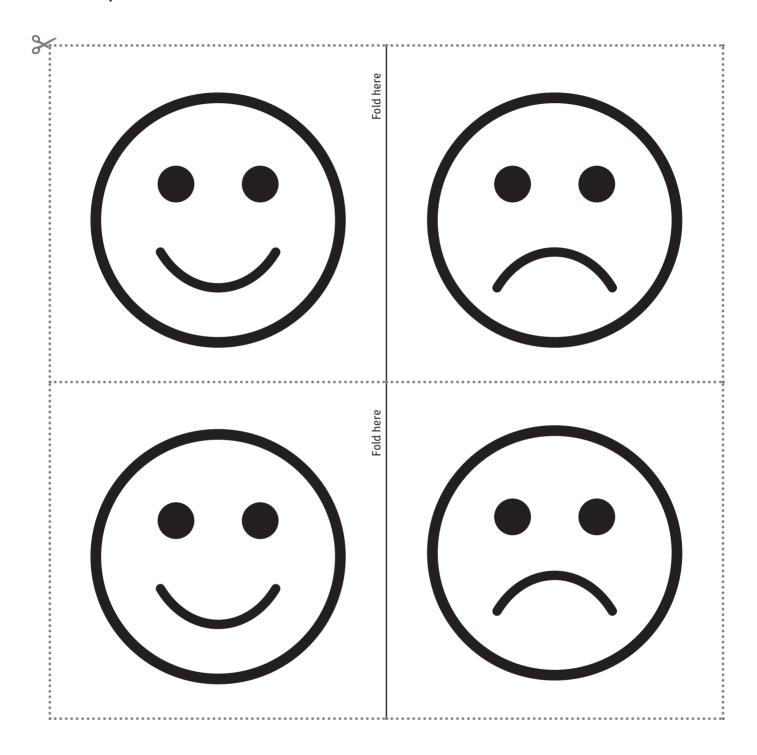
Extra resources

Contents

Happy/Sad face cards	152
Traffic light cards	153
Blank storyboard	154
Picture charades cards	155
Word charades cards	156
Don't say it! cards	157
Irregular verbs	158

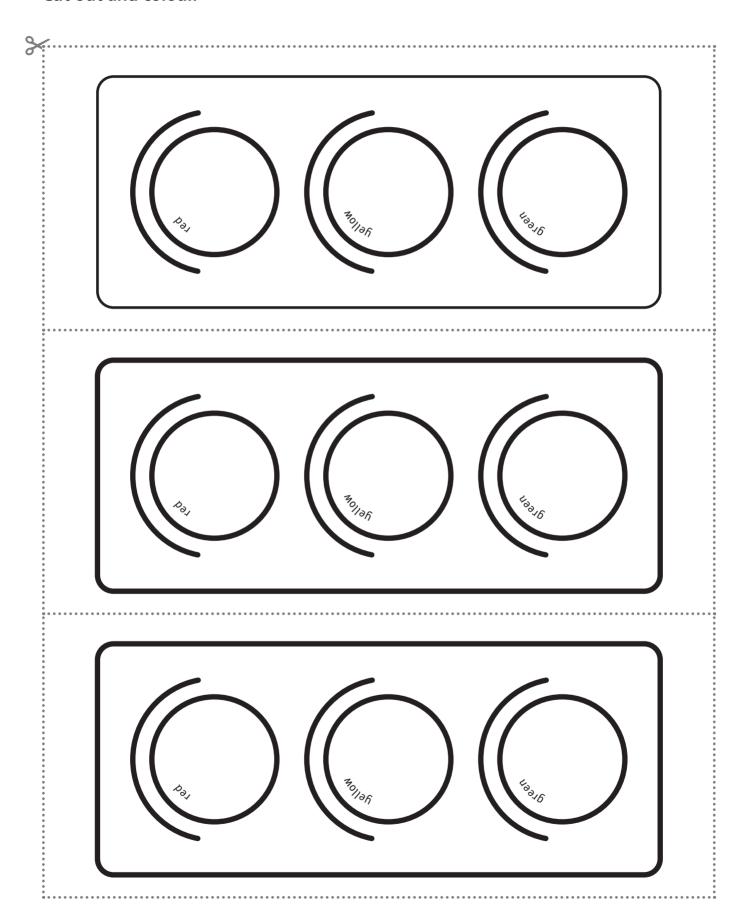
Happy/Sad face cards

Cut out, fold and stick.



Traffic light cards

Cut out and colour.



Blank storyboard

Draw and write your story!

Story title:	
3	
5	6

Picture charades cards

Cut out and play.

ع	<u> </u>			
	straight hair	polite	study	spacesuit
	bake a cake	gas	butcher's	turtle
	a beard	lazy	smartwatch	money box
	Sun	send an email	untidy	toy shop

Teacher note

the words on these cards cover all of Semester 1, so you should play this game at the end of the book as a review activity.

Word charades cards

Cut out and play.

·			
a moustache	juggle	win a race	telescope
build a robot	Saturn	wallet	monkey
dark hair	friendly	fishmonger's	comet
earn	post a letter	make a sandwich	keyboard

Teacher note:

the words on these cards cover all of Semester 1, so you should play this game at the end of the book as a review activity.

Don't say it! cards

Cut out and play.

beard	spell	tablet	star
✗ face ✗ hair	✗ letters ✗ words	🗡 computer 🗡 Wi-Fi	X light X sky
make a pizza	Earth	pharmacy	parrot
X bake X bread	✗ planet ✗ people	✗ medicine ✗ shop	🗡 talk 🗡 bird
email	butcher's	go swimming	count
✗ computer ✗ send	✗ meat ✗ sell	✗ water ✗ swimming pool	✗ numbers ✗ maths
friendly	study	rocket	sports shop
✗ people ✗ friend	✗ school ✗ work	✗ fly ✗ space	✗ sport ✗ clothes

Teacher note:

the words on these cards cover all of Semester 1, so you should play this game at the end of the book as a review activity.

Irregular verbs

Infinitive	Past simple
be	was/were
buy	bought
do	did
drink	drank
drive	drove
eat	ate
find	found
get	got
give	gave
go	went
have	had
hold	held
keep	kept
know	knew
lose	lost
make	made
put	put
ride	rode
run	ran
see	saw
sell	sold
send	sent
sing	sang
sleep	slept
stand	stood
take	took
tell	told
throw	threw
wear	wore
win	won
write	wrote

Notes

Notes			

Notes	

Notes		

Notes	

Notes		

Notes	

Image Credit(s):

Alamy Stock Photo: Christine Navin 54, Geopix 44, Mint Images Limited 9, NG Images 44, Paltu Shyamal 13, SeventyFour Images 13, UrbanImages 54; Shutterstock.com: Adam Radosavljevic 21, 31, AFANASEV IVAN 21, Africa Studio 53, 64, Albert Barr 37, AlenKadr 63, Alexander Limbach 33, 35, 61, 63, Alexey Boldin 21, 31, Alhovik 37, Andrei Armiagov 37, Andrey_Popov 25, Andy J Billington 42, Angel Simon 63, Ann in the uk 32, Anna Nahabed 21, AnonimS 14, 26, 42, antoniodiaz 53, apiguide 61, AshTproductions 7, Axel Bueckert 21, Azret Ayubov 7, BearFotos 49, 53, Bogdan Wankowicz 63, carballo 9, 21, ClassicVector 26, Cmspic 14, creativemarc 35, Cryptographer 18, Daniel Chetroni 9, DaveO 34, David Woods 37, Denis Dryashkin 62, Djomas 7, Dmytro Zinkevych 7, Dragon Images 9, Elena Schweitzer 62, Elena Yakusheva 18, Engineer studio 14, 37, eurobanks 17, 52, evka119 64, Fer Gregory 37, fizkes 25, fotorich01 28, Gandolfo Cannatella 63, Gita Kulinitch Studio 63, Ground Picture 9, GWImages 25, hareluya 32, horsemen 60, Iconic Bestiary 53, In Green 21, iofoto 13, Jiri Hera 63, Juergen Faelchle 37, Juice Flair 49, Juice Verve 49, Khorzhevska 65, Kwangmoozaa 49, Laverne Nash 60, LightField Studios 13, macrowildlife 34, Marko Bowman 60, Mit Kapevski 63, Mladen Mitrinovic 14, MNStudio 25, Monkey Business Images 7, 26, Mopic 34, Motortion Films 9, Mr Nai 42, MurrLove 28, naluwan 53, NASA images 37, nesssss 49, New Africa 31, 45, 57, Oleksiy Mark 21, 31, Olga Visavi 61, pathdoc 9, Paul Looyen 60, Paul Vasarhelyi 9, pavla 13, Peoplelmages.com - Yuri A 15, Petr Malyshev 21, Photoongraphy 53, Photoscreation 53, Phovoir 18, Pixel-Shot 61, PixMarket 63, Pixtells 49, PRASANNAPIX 64, Pressmaster 9, Prostock-studio 9, 21, PTZ Pictures 42, Quang Ho 28, Red Fox studio 7, Repina Valeriya 62, Rich Carey 61, Robert Plociennik 9, Rohappy 31, Ron Ellis 28, R_Tee 65, Runrun2 25, sabyna75 62, SakSa 60, Sarawut Aiemsinsuk 54, Sean Pavone 26, S.Dashkevych 21, Sergey Novikov 25, Sergey Ryzhov 49, SJ Travel Photo and Video 61, solarseven 37, sonya etchison 9, Spectral-Design 25, SPELIM 26, StocklmageFactory.com 7, StockphotoVideo 62, Stock-Studio 32, T.TATSU 9, Tetyana Kaganska 15, THINK A 49, Travel_Master 49, Tristan3D 35, tropicdreams 61, Vadim Sadovski 37, VaLiza 7, 17, 52, Varavin88 32, vblinov 60, 61, Vitaly Korovin 63, Voyagerix 25, www. hollandfoto.net 49, YAKOBCHUK VIACHESLAV 18, 32, Yeryomina Anastassiya 34, Yuliia Yuliia 65, zhengchengbao 34, zimmytws 53, ZouZou 13

Ministry of Education: 15

Illustrated by Pablo Velarde and José Luis Ágreda (unit openers and stories), Miguel Calero Hernández, Alberto de Hoyos Masó, Carmen Marcos Vaca, Christos Skaltsas (Hyphen) and Zacharias Papadopoulos (Hyphen)

Cover Image: Pablo Velarde and José Luis Ágreda, Alpineguide